

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Fabia Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- Denotes the end of a section.
- Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- Denotes a registered trademark.
- Denotes the display in the MAXI DOT display.
- Denotes the display in the segment display.

Display

The display in the segment display will be used in this Owner's Manual to represent the display unless otherwise specified.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.



5J6012720AG

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)



Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.
- "ŠKODA service partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- "ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Owner's Manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **models**.

The manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle **does not necessarily contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The scope of equipment of your vehicle relates to your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)

The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety	6	Electrical power windows	51	Manual gear shifting and pedals	105
General information	6	Electric sliding/tilting roof	54	Automatic transmission	106
Correct and safe seated position	7	Lights and visibility	56	Running in	109
Seat belts	10	Lights	56	Economical driving and respect the environment	110
Wearing seat belts	10	Interior lights	60	Avoiding damage to your vehicle	113
Inertia reel and belt pretensioners	13	Visibility	61	Driving abroad	114
Airbag system	14	Windscreen wipers and washers	62	Assist systems	115
Description of the airbag system	14	Rear window	64	Brake assist systems	115
Airbag overview	15	Seats and storage	66	Parking aid	117
Deactivating airbags	17	Front seats	66	Cruise control system	118
Transporting children safely	19	Rear seats	67	START-STOP	119
Child seat	19	Head restraints	68	Towing a trailer	121
Fastening systems	22	Boot	69	Towing device	121
Using the system		Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Fabia Estate)	73	Trailer	125
Cockpit	25	Net partition (Fabia Estate)	74	General Maintenance	
Overview	24	Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment	76	Car care	127
Instruments and Indicator Lights	26	Roof rack system	77	Services, modifications and technical alterations	127
Instrument cluster	26	Useful equipment	78	Washing the car	129
Multifunction display (MFD)	29	Storage compartments	81	Vehicle exterior care	130
Service Interval Display	32	Heating and air conditioning	85	Care of the interior	133
MAXI DOT display	33	Heating, ventilation, cooling	85	Inspecting and replenishing	136
Warning lights	35	Heating	87	Fuel	136
Unlocking and locking	42	Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)	88	Engine compartment	139
Unlocking and locking	42	Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)	91	Engine oil	142
Central locking system	45	Communication and multimedia	93	Coolant	144
Remote control	48	Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II	93	Brake fluid	146
Anti-theft alarm system	49	Voice control	98	Vehicle battery	146
Tailgate	50	Multimedia	99	Wheels	150
		Driving		Tyres and rims	150
		Starting-off and Driving	102	Winter use	156
		Starting and stopping the engine	102		
		Brakes	103		

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help	157
Emergency equipment	157
Changing a wheel	158
Tyre repair	161
Jump-starting	163
Towing the vehicle	165
Fuses and light bulbs	167
Fuses	167
Bulbs	169

Technical data

Technical data	175
Vehicle data	175

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
TCS	Traction control
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before every journey	6
Driving safety	6
Safety equipment	6

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

! WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before every journey

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- ✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ✓ Make sure that the function of the wiper and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.

- ✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- ✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- ✓ Secure all items of luggage.
- ✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- ✓ Close all doors and the engine compartment and luggage compartment lid.
- ✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- ✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » [page 19, Transporting children safely](#).
- ✓ Adopt the correct seated position » [page 7, Correct and safe seated position](#). Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- ✓ Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- ✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys - at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 6 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Side airbags.

- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position of the driver	7
Adjusting the steering wheel position	8
Correct seated position of the front passenger	8
Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers	9
Examples of incorrect seated positions	9

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » [page 19, Transporting children safely](#) with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position of the driver

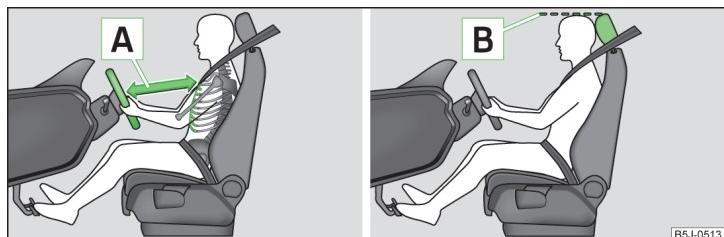


Fig. 1 The correct distance of the driver to the steering wheel/correctly adjusted head restraint

 Read and observe  on [page 7](#) first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following settings.

- ✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- ✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- ✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » [Fig. 1, Adjusting the steering wheel position](#).
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **B**.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » [page 10, Wearing seat belts](#).

[Setting the seats and head restraints](#) » [page 66](#).

! WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure your arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 2
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 2.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards to the stop.

! WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked while you are driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey - there is the risk of an accident.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position of the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **B** » Fig. 1 on page 7 » page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10.

Setting the seats and head restraints » page 66 .

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 17, *Deactivating airbags*.

! WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers

 Read and observe  on page 7 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head  » Fig. 1 on page 7 » page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10, *Wearing seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.

Setting the seats and head restraints » page 66 .

Examples of incorrect seated positions

 Read and observe  on page 7 first.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seatbelts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may lead to serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not recline the seat backrest too far.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear bench seat.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.

- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
- ✓ Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without wearing a seat belt.
- ✓ Do not sit in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Wearing seat belts

Introduction

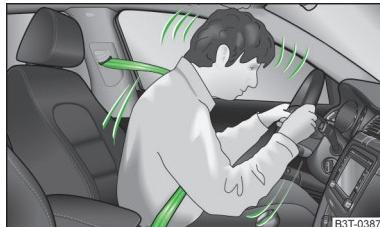


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision	11
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	12
Belt height adjustment on the front seats	13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt benefit greatly from the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed by the belts as much as possible.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.

! WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear - there is a risk of injury.
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » [page 12, Fastening and unfastening seat belts](#).
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » [page 7, Correct and safe seated position](#).
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

! WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

! WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

! WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use a seatbelt to secure two persons (not even children). Nor may the seat belt be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 67](#).

! WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belts may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 135, Seat belts](#).
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the seat belt concerned must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

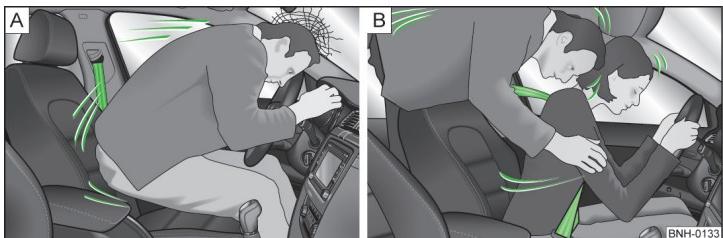


Fig. 4 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt

Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/h increases the kinetic energy four times.

The notion that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreens in ways which cannot be controlled » [Fig. 4 - A](#). In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated in the front » Fig. 4 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

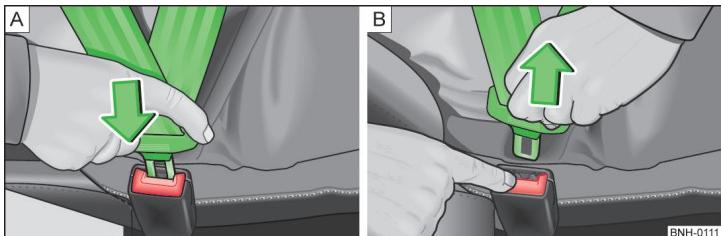


Fig. 5 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

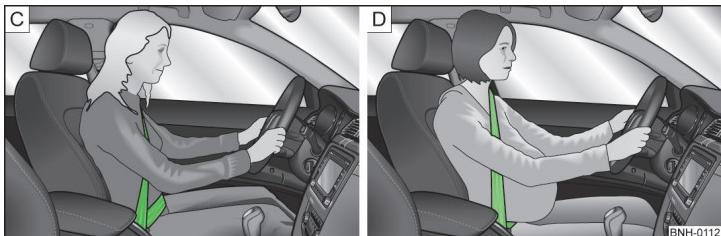


Fig. 6 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

Read and observe on page 10 first.

Fasten

- » Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 69.
- » Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

» Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 5 - [A] until it you hear it click into place.

» Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not lie across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

The lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis on expectant mothers to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- » Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - [B], the lock tongue pops out.
- » Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

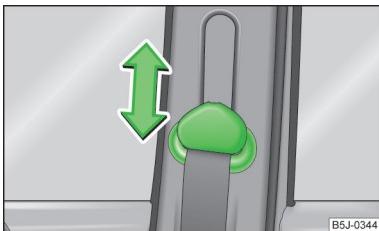


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

B5J-0344

Read and observe on page 10 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	13
Belt tensioners	13

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

The seat belt can move freely when it is pulled slowly. The seat belt is locked by the inertia reel when it is pulled suddenly.

The belts also lock under full braking, under acceleration, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when it is pulled sharply, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision with a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

! Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	14
Airbag deployment	14

! WARNING

- An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » [page 7, Correct and safe seated position](#).
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

! WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to tamper with individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the  indicator light in the instrument cluster » [page 40](#).

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists - depending on the vehicle equipment - of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » [page 15](#).
- Side airbags » [page 16](#).
- Head airbags » [page 17](#).
- Airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster » [page 40](#).
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » [page 18](#).
- Warning light for front passenger airbag deactivation in dash panel centre » [page 18](#).

i Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags are **not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- › Driver's front airbag.
- › Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- › Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- › Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- › the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- › the hazard warning light is switched on;
- › all the doors are unlocked;
- › the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	15
Side airbags	16
Head airbags	17

Front airbags

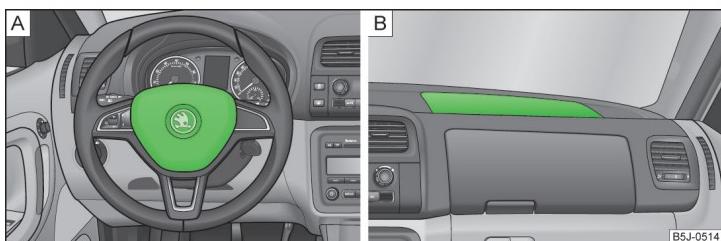


Fig. 8 Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dashboard

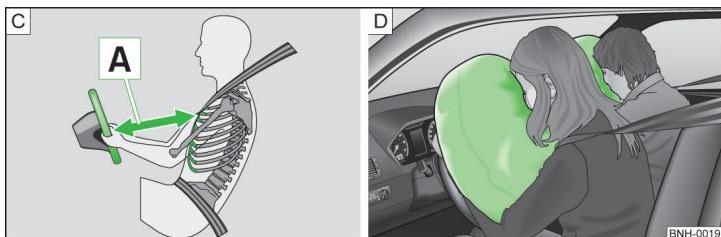


Fig. 9 Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 8 - [A].

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - [B].

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 9 - [D]. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard **A** » Fig. 9. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death. The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » page 17, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Side airbags

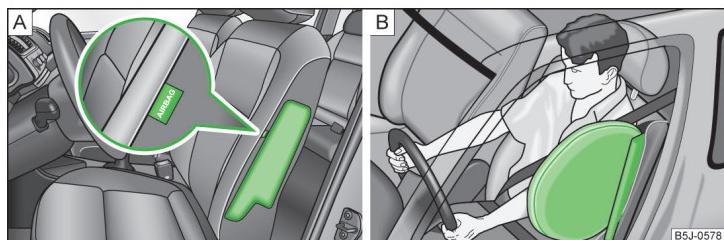


Fig. 10 Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbag

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 10 - **A**.

The head airbag and belt tensioner on the relevant side are also automatically deployed when the side airbags » Fig. 10 - **B** are deployed.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 21, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 19, *Child seat*.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

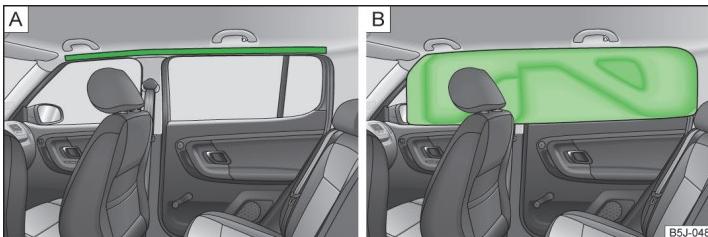


Fig. 11 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 11 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

The airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar when it is deployed » Fig. 11 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

! WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 127.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

i Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Book Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags	18
Switching off the front passenger airbag	18

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered only in the following cases, for example.

- › When using a child seat on the front passenger seat, in which the child has its back to the vehicle's direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to different legal regulations applying) » page 19, *Transporting children safely*.
- › If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- › If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- › If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 18.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Service Partner to switch off any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

› The  warning light lights up for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

› The  warning light comes on for about 3 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
› The   » Fig. 12 on page 18 warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA Service Partner will be able to inform you which airbags in your vehicle can/must be deactivated.

¹⁾ The   airbag warning light comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

Switching off the front passenger airbag



Fig. 12 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the passenger door.
- › Fold the key bit out completely for the radio key » .
- › Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- › Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position  » Fig. 12 OFF.
- › Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » .
- › Close the passenger door.
- › Check whether the   warning light in the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  message in the centre of the dash panel lights up after the ignition has been switched on.

Switching on

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the passenger door.
- › Fold the key bit out completely for the radio key » .
- › Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- › Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position  » Fig. 12 ON.
- › Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » .
- › Close the passenger door.

► Check whether the **3 OFF** warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** message in the centre of the dash panel does not light up after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the **OFF** warning light flashes, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
- Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
- The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	20
Child safety and side airbag	21
Classification of child seats	21
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	21

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

! WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle throughout the journey. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!

! WARNING (Continued)

- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel. Further information » [page 20, Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat](#).

! Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

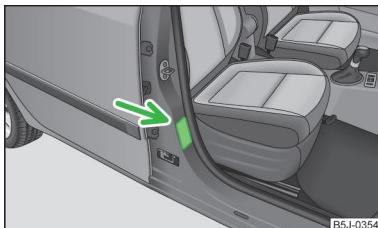


Fig. 13
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.
B5J-0354



Fig. 14 Front passenger sun visor / label

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » [!](#).
- Adjust the front passenger seat back as vertically as possible so that there is firm contact passenger seat back and the child seat back.
- Where possible, move the front passenger seat back so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat behind.
- In the case of Group 2 or 3 child seats, make sure that the deflector pulley mounted on the child seat headrest is in front of or level with the pulley on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » [page 17, Deactivating airbags](#).
- **Never** use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
 - On the B-column on the front passenger side » [Fig. 13](#). The sticker is visible when opening the front passenger door.
 - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » [Fig. 14](#).
- In the case of Group 2 or 3 child seats, make sure that the deflector pulley mounted on the child seat headrest is in front of or level with the pulley on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched on again once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer in use on the passenger seat.

Child safety and side airbag



Fig. 15
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

The child must not be positioned in the area into which the side airbag will deploy » [Fig. 15 - A](#).

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » [Fig. 15 - B](#).

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag - there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags - there is a risk of injury.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat Center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

- U** "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ISOFIX system attachment points	22
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system	22
TOP TETHER system attachment points	23

ISOFIX system attachment points



Fig. 16
ISOFIX system label

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 16.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system - risk of death.

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

^{b)} If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the ISO-FIX child seat is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

TOP TETHER system attachment points

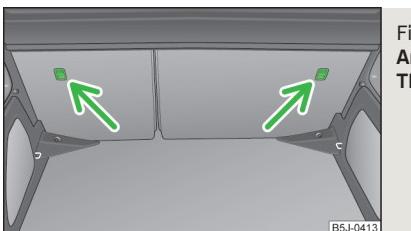


Fig. 17
Anchor eyelets on the TOP
TETHER system

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 17.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.

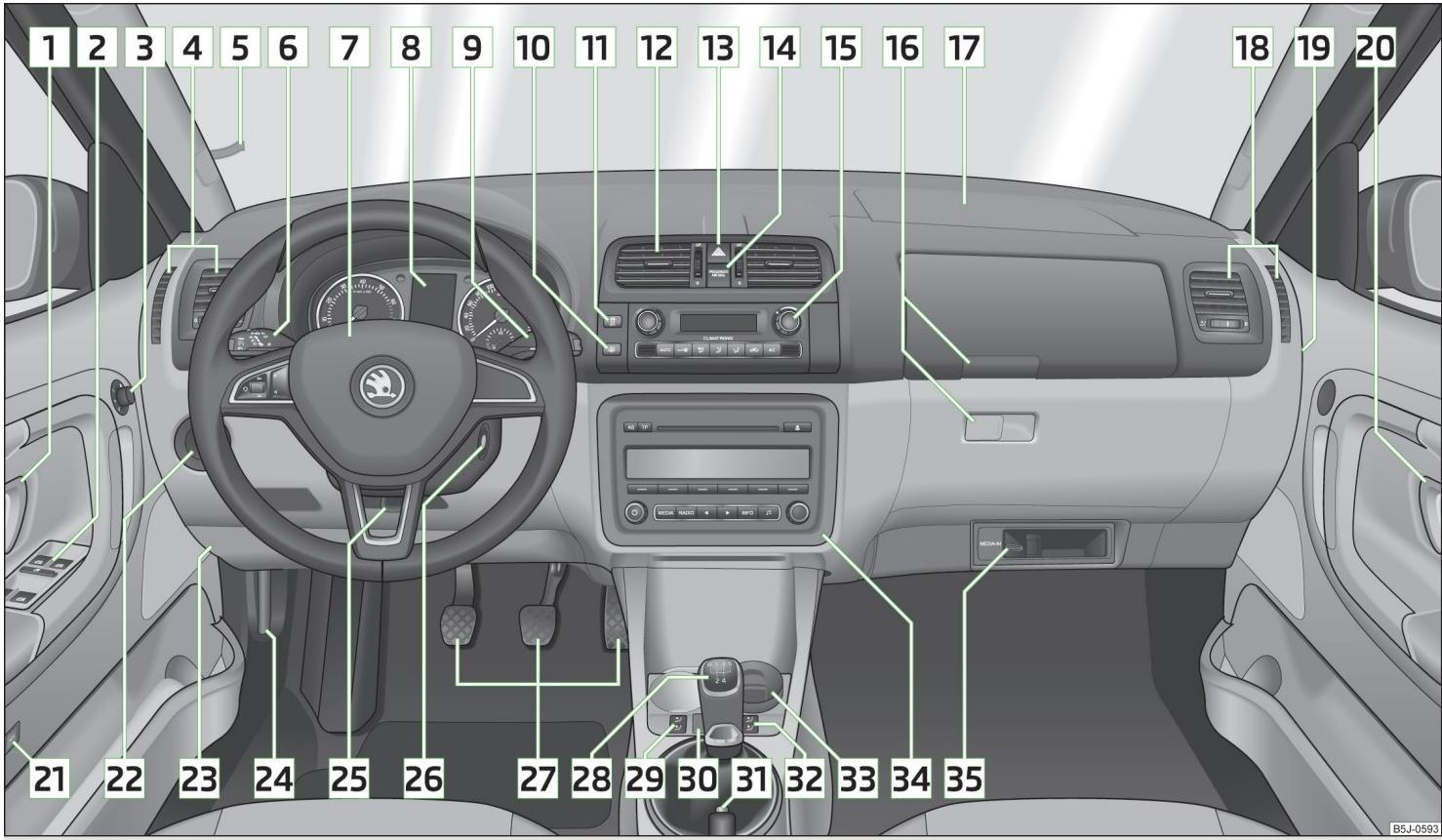


Fig. 18 Cockpit

B5J-0593

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

- 1** Door opening lever _____
- 2** Electrical power windows _____
- 3** Electric exterior mirror adjustment _____
- 4** Air outlet vents _____
- 5** Parking ticket holder _____
- 6** Operating stalk:
 - Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher _____
 - Speed regulating system _____
- 7** Steering wheel:
 - With horn _____
 - With driver's front airbag _____
 - With pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone _____
- 8** Instrument cluster: Instruments and warning lights _____
- 9** Operating stalk:
 - Windscreen wiper and wash system _____
 - Multifunction display _____
 - MAXI DOT display _____
- 10** Button for rear window heater _____
- 11** TCS switch _____
- 12** Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel _____
- 13** Button for hazard warning light system _____
- 14** Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag _____
- 15** Depending on equipment fitted:
 - Operating controls for the heating _____
 - Operating controls for the air conditioning system _____
 - Operating controls for Climatronic _____
- 16** Storage compartments on the front passenger side _____
- 17** Front passenger airbag _____
- 18** Air outlet vents _____
- 19** Key-operated switch for the front seat passenger airbag _____

20 Door opening lever _____	44	44
21 Switch depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➢ Boot lid remote release _____➢ Interior monitor _____	51	50
22 Light switch and headlamp beam adjustment _____	56, 57	57
23 Fuse box in the dashboard _____	167	167
24 Bonnet release lever _____	140	140
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel _____	8	8
26 Ignition lock _____	103	103
27 Pedals _____	105	105
28 Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➢ Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) _____➢ Selector lever (automatic gearbox) _____	105	106
29 Rocker switch for front left seat heating _____	67	67
30 Central locking system _____	47	47
31 Handbrake _____	105	105
32 Rocker switch for front right seat heating _____	67	67
33 Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➢ Ashtrays _____➢ Storage compartment _____	79	83
34 Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➢ Radio _____➢ Navigation system _____	101	101
35 MDI _____		
1 Note		
The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 18 . The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.		
87		
88		
91		
82		
15		
86		
18		

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	26
Engine revolutions counter	27
Speedometer	27
Coolant temperature gauge display	27
Fuel gauge	27
Counter for distance driven	28
Digital clock	28
Display of the second speed	28
Recommended gear	28

Fault display

The **Error** message will appear in the display if there is a fault in the instrument cluster. Ensure that the fault is rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview



Fig. 19 Instrument cluster

Read and observe ! on page 26 first.

- 1 Revolutions counter with warning lights » [page 27](#)
- 2 Display:
 - With counter for distance driven » [page 28](#)
 - With service interval display » [page 32](#)
 - With digital clock » [page 28](#)
 - With multifunction display (MFA) » [page 29](#)
 - With the MAXI DOT display » [page 33](#)
- 3 Speedometer with warning lights » [page 27](#)
- 4 Coolant temperature gauge¹⁾ » [page 27](#)
- 5 Button for display mode:
 - Setting the hours/minutes » [page 28](#)
 - Enable/disable the display of the second speed²⁾ » [page 28](#)
 - Service interval²⁾ - Display of the number of days, kilometres or miles remaining until the next Service³⁾ » [page 32](#)

¹⁾ Applies for vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

²⁾ Applies for vehicles with a segment display.

³⁾ Applies for models in which the values are indicated in British measuring units.

6 Button for:

- Reset daily trip counter » [page 28](#)
- Set hours/minutes
- Enable/disable the mode selected by means of button **5**

7 Fuel gauge¹⁾ » [page 27](#)

Engine revolutions counter

Read and observe **!** on page 26 first.

The red scale of the rev counter **1** » [Fig. 19 on page 26](#) indicates the range in which the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or move the selector lever into position D if your car is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

To maintain the optimum motor speed, observe the gearshift indicator » [page 28](#).

For the sake of the environment

Shifting up in good time has the following benefits.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces engine noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the service life and reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

Read and observe **!** on page 26 first.

Warning against speeding

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h²⁾. The audible warning is switched off once the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge display

Read and observe **!** on page 26 first.

The coolant temperature gauge **4** » [Fig. 19 on page 26](#) operates only when the ignition is switched on.

In vehicles with a segment display, the coolant temperature is indicated only by one of the warning lights » [page 37](#),  Coolant coming on or going off.

Cold range

The pointer in the left of the scale indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or under heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

The coolant temperature is too high if the pointer reaches the red area of the scale. Further information » [page 37](#).

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel gauge

Read and observe **!** on page 26 first.

The fuel gauge **7** » [Fig. 19 on page 26](#) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel remaining is displayed in the segment display on vehicles with the segment display.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 45 litres. The warning light lights up when the fuel level reaches the reserve range  » [page 40](#).

¹⁾ Applies for vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

²⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Counter for distance driven

 **Read and observe**  **on page 26 first.**

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in km. In some countries the measuring unit "mile" is used.

Daily trip counter (trip)

The trip counter indicates the distance you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset trip meter

The meter can be reset by pressing and holding button  » Fig. 19 on page 26.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance in kilometres or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

i Note

If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Digital clock

 **Read and observe**  **on page 26 first.**

The clock is set with buttons  and  » Fig. 19 on page 26.

Select the display that you wish to change with the button  and carry out the change with the button .

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **clock** in the Time menu » page 34.

Display of the second speed

 **Read and observe**  **on page 26 first.**

The display can show the current speed in mph¹⁾.

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different units for speed.

MAXI DOT display

The display of the second speed can be set in the Settings menu item » page 34, *Settings*.

Segment display

- » Press the  » Fig. 19 on page 26 key repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 28.
- » Press the  key while the display is flashing.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

Display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Recommended gear

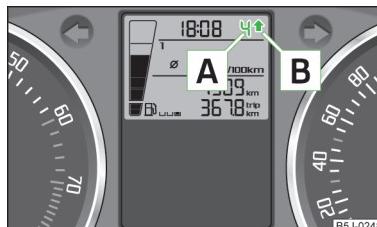


Fig. 20
Recommended gear

 **Read and observe**  **on page 26 first.**

The gear currently **engaged** is shown in the instrument cluster display **A** » Fig. 20.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

¹⁾ On models on which the speedometer indicates mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

If the control unit recognises that it is beneficial to change gear, an arrow **B** is shown in the display. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether you should shift into a higher or lower gear.

At the same time, the **recommended** gear is shown at **A** instead of the gear **selected** on vehicles with a **manual gearbox**.

! CAUTION

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	29
Operation	30
Multifunction display details	30
Warning against speeding	31

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

The multifunction display shown in the segment display » Fig. 21 on page 29 or in the MAXI DOT display depending on your vehicle model » page 33.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display » page 33, there is an option not to display some of the information.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully on your driving at all times. As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

i Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.

Memory

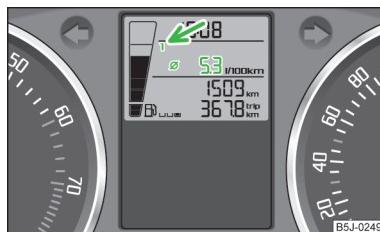


Fig. 21
Multifunction display

i Read and observe **1** on page 29 first.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is shown in the Display » Fig. 21.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switch memories using button **B** » Fig. 22 on page 30 on the windscreen wiper stalk.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total trip memory collates the data from any number of individual trips up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1999 km or, for vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, 99 hours and 59 minutes, or 9999 km. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

i Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.

Operation

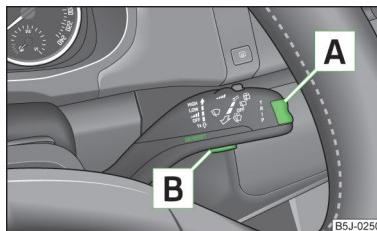


Fig. 22
Multifunction display: Control elements

Read and observe on page 29 first.

The Toggle button for selecting menu items **[A]** » Fig. 22 and button **[B]** are found on the wiper stalk.

Select menu items

► Briefly press the top or bottom of rocker switch **[A]** » Fig. 22. This opens the individual menu items in the multifunction display one after the other.

Select memory

► Press button **[B]** » Fig. 22.

Reset memory

► Select the desired memory.
► Press and hold button **[B]** » Fig. 22.

The following values from the memory selected will be set to zero by button **[B]**.

- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance driven.
- Average speed.
- Driving time

Multifunction display details

Read and observe on page 29 first.

Outside temperature

The current outside temperature is displayed¹⁾.

The temperature is shown with the snowflake symbol if the outdoor temperature is below +4 °C.

This display flashes for a few seconds, then shows the most recently displayed function²⁾.

If the temperature drops below +4 °C while the car is driving at a speed faster than 10 km / h, a beep is also heard.

Driving time

The driving time elapsed since the memory was last erased appears in the display. Reset the memory to zero by pressing the button » page 30, Operation to measure the driving time from a particular moment.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with a MAXI DOT display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is reset to zero when this value is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km³⁾. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed⁴⁾.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km³⁾.

Set the memory to zero at the start of a new measurement if you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period » page 30, Operation. No value will appear in the display after it has been erased until you have driven approximately 300 m.

¹⁾ This information is always shown on vehicles with a MAXI DOT display.

²⁾ This is not the case on the MAXI DOT display.

³⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

⁴⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --, kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range

The estimated range is displayed in kilometres. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. The value is displayed in steps of 5 km after the  warning light has come on.

The fuel consumption over the preceding 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after the battery has been disconnected), a fuel consumption of 10 l/100 km is used initially, then the value is adapted according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed. Reset the memory to zero if you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment » page 30, *Operation*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1999 km or 9999 km on vehicles with a MAXI DOT display. The indicator is reset to zero when this value is exceeded.

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour. Set the memory to zero at the start of measurement to determine the average speed over a certain period » page 30, *Operation*.

No value will appear in the display until you have driven approximately 300 m after this information has been deleted.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current speed

The current speed, identical to the display on the speedometer  » Fig. 19 on page 26, is displayed.

Oil temperature¹⁾

The current engine oil temperature is displayed. If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, only - - - is displayed instead of the oil temperature.

¹⁾ Applies for vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display.

²⁾ An initial value of 30 km/h is displayed automatically if no value has been specified.

Warning against speeding

The warning that the speed limit is being exceeded can be enabled/disabled in the display » page 31.

Warning against speeding

 Read and observe  on page 29 first.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- › Press button  » Fig. 22 on page 30 to select the **Warning at (MAXI DOT display)** or  (segment display) menu item.
- › Press button  to activate the ability to set the speed limit²⁾ (value flashes).
- › Use the button  to set the required speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- › Confirm the speed limit that was set with button , or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- › Press button  » Fig. 22 on page 30 to select the **Warning at (MAXI DOT display)** or  (segment display) menu item.
- › Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- › Press button  to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- › Confirm the speed limit that was set by pressing button  again, or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

Change or delete speed limit

- › Press button  » Fig. 22 on page 30 to select the **Warning at (MAXI DOT display)** or  (segment display) menu item.
- › Pressing button  disables the speed limit.
- › Pressing the button  activates the ability to change the speed limit.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The **Warning at (MAXI DOT display)** or  (segment display) menu item appears in the display with the limit set.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on.

Service Interval Display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Prompt in the segment display	32
Display in the MAXI DOT display	33

A message concerning the kilometres and days remaining until the next service is due is shown for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on until the end of the service interval is reached.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or days until the service due date is reached.

Resetting the oil change service indicator in a specialist dealer's

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the screen displays, the values of a new service interval is displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then further continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work will be done by a specialist garage.
- For more information on the service intervals, see the » *Serviceplan*, chapter *service schedules*.

Prompt in the segment display



Fig. 23
Example of a message

Oil change service

If an **oil change service** is due, the icon and the number **1** is displayed at the position identified with the arrow for approximately 10 seconds » Fig. 23.

The icon is shown together with the days and kilometres remaining to the next service.

As soon as the service due date is reached, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** appears in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

Inspection

If an **inspection** is due, the icon and the number **2** are displayed at the position identified with the arrow for approximately 10 seconds » Fig. 23.

The icon is shown together with the days and kilometres remaining to the next service.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, the flashing icon and the **INSPEC _** message appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service

You can press button **[5]** » Fig. 19 on page 26 repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

The icon appears together with the icon and the distance and time to the next service appear in the display for about 10 seconds.

The distance and the days remaining until the next **oil change service** are displayed first; the distance and the days remaining until the next **inspection** are displayed after the button **[5]** is pressed again.

i Note

The kilometres remaining until the next service are displayed instead of the odometer.

Display in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service

If an oil change service is due, the message **Oil change in ... km or days**.

As soon as the service date has arrived, the message **Oil change now!** appears after the ignition is switched on.

Inspection

If an inspection is due, the message **Inspection in ... km or ... days**.

As soon as the service interval date has arrived, the message **Inspection now!** appears after the ignition is switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

You can display the remaining distance and days until the next service in the **Settings** menu whenever the ignition is switched on » [page 34](#).

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu	33
Settings	34
Door, boot lid and bonnet warning	34
Auto Check Control	34

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the vehicle equipment) relating to the radio, mobile phone, multi-functional display, navigation system, the device connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox » [page 106](#).

Lighting up of certain symbols is combined with an acoustic warning signal.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully on your driving at all times. As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

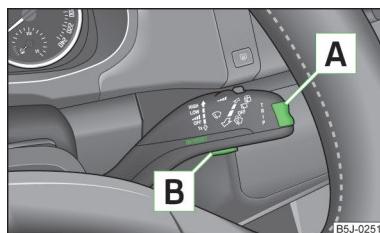


Fig. 24

Operating stalk: MAXI DOT display controls

Read and observe **! on page 33 first.**

- » Press and hold rocker switch **A** » [Fig. 24](#) to activate the **MAIN MENU**.
- » Individual menu items can be selected by pressing rocker switch **A**. When the pushbutton **B** is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Overview of the menu items in the main menu.

- **MFD (Multifunction display)** » [page 29](#)
- **Audio** » [Operating instructions for the radio](#)
- **Navigation** » [Operating instructions for the navigation system](#)
- **Phone** » [page 93](#);
- **Vehicle status** » [page 34](#)
- **Settings** » [page 34](#)

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

i Note

- Warning messages shown in the information display must be confirmed by pressing button **B** briefly » [Fig. 24](#) to call up the main menu.
- The menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after 10 seconds if the display is not currently active.
- Using the factory-fitted radio or navigation system » [Radio operating instructions](#) or » [Navigation system operating instructions](#).

Settings

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

You can change certain settings yourself through the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

You can select the following menu options:

Language

You can set the language for the warning and information texts here.

MFD data

Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Time

The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres

Here, you can set the speed at which an audible signal should sound. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

The following is shown on the information display if this speed is exceeded:

Winter tyres: maximum ... km/h.

Units of measurement

The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Alt. speed dis.

Display of the second speed in mph¹⁾ can be activated here.

Service

The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Factory setting

The display can be restored to its factory settings here.

Door, boot lid and bonnet warning

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is open, the MAXI DOT display shows the vehicle with the corresponding door or boot/bonnet **open**.

An audible signal also sounds if the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 km/h.

Auto Check Control

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

Vehicle condition

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 35.

The **Vehicle status** menu item is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message is present. The first of the fault messages is displayed after this menu item is selected. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning symbols

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 36
	Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot	» page 34
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 36

Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot

If the  symbol appears in the MAXI DOT display, this indicates that the temperature of the automatic DSG gearbox clutches is too high.

¹⁾ On models on which the speedometer indicates mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop. Log book!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the  icon goes out – there is a risk of gearbox damage. You can continue your journey as soon as the icon disappears.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 60](#).

Note

- Warning messages shown in the MAXI DOT display must be confirmed with button  » [Fig. 24 on page 33](#) to call up the main menu.
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

 Handbrake	35
 Brake system	36
 Seat belt warning light	36
 Generator	36
 Door open	36
 Engine oil	36
 Coolant	37
 Power steering	38
 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	38
 Traction Control System (ASR)	38
 Antilock brake system (ABS)	38
 The rear fog light	39
 Bulb failure	39
 Exhaust inspection system	39
 Glow plug system (diesel engine)	39

 EPC	EPC fault light (petrol engine)	39
 Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)		39
 Fuel reserve		40
 Airbag system		40
 Tyre pressure		41
 Windscreen washer fluid level		41
 Traction control (TCS) switched off		41
 Turn signal system		41
 Low beam		41
 Fog lights		41
 Cruise control system		42
 Selector lever lock		42
 Main beam		42

The warning lights show certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

WARNING

- If illuminated warning lights and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes are not observed, this may result in severe injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is essential to observe safety notes » [page 139, Engine compartment](#).

Handbrake

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light  comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The  indicator light comes on if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Log book!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 146.

Further information » page 103, *Brakes*.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 60.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 139, *Engine compartment*.
- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light  » page 38,  *Antilock brake system (ABS)*,  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of accident.

Seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The  indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten their seat belt. The indicator light only goes out once the driver and front passenger have fastened their seat belt.

A steady warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and the  flashes if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.

The warning signal is switched off and the  indicator light is permanently lit if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.

Further information » page 10.

Generator

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

If the warning light lights up  when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage. The electrical system requires checking.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights system » page 60.

CAUTION

 **Do not continue driving** if the  warning light (coolant system fault) lights up in addition to the  warning light while you are driving. Stop the engine - there is a risk of engine damage.

Door open

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light  comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights system » page 60.

Engine oil

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

 The warning light  lights up red (**low oil pressure**)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Engine off! Log book!

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on¹⁾.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 143.

Even if the oil level is correct,  do not drive any further if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The warning light lights up yellow (oil quantity too low)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

■ Check oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 143.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow (engine oil level sensor faulty)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

■ Oil sensor workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light flashes  several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights system » page 60.

! CAUTION

The red oil pressure light  is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refuelling stop.

¹⁾ The  warning light does not light up in vehicles fitted with the MAXI DOT display when the ignition is switched on, but only if there is a fault or the engine oil level is too low.

²⁾ Not on vehicles with the MAXI DOT display.

Coolant

■ Read and observe on page 35 first.

The indicator light  lights up until the engine reaches operating temperature²⁾. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the warning light  lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

An audible signal sounds as a warning tone.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

■ Check engine coolant! Log book!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant » page 145, and refill the coolant if necessary » page 145.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the radiator fan. Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 169, Fuses in the engine compartment.

Do not continue driving if the warning light   does not go off even though the coolant level is correct and the fuse for the fan is in working order!

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 60.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Power steering

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electrohydraulic power steering. The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or does not function at all.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- If the yellow warning light  goes out after the engine is restarted and a short drive, it is not necessary to visit a specialist garage.
- If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.
- There is no power-assisted steering support when the vehicle is being towed without the engine running or when the power-assisted steering is defect. The vehicle is fully steerable however. There is however increased force required to turn the steering wheel.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light flashes  to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light  comes on immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. The ESC is fully functional again if the  warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on.

There is a fault in the ESC system if the  warning light lights up.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The ESC system cannot be turned off, the  » page 116 button only switches the TCS off, the  warning light in the instrument cluster lights up.

As the ESC operates in conjunction with the ABS, the ESP indicator light will also come on if the ABS system fails.

Further information » [page 115, Stabilisation control \(ESC\)](#).

Note

The  warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. The warning light should go out after the vehicle has driven a short distance.

Traction Control System (ASR)

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light flashes  to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ASR can be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. The TCS is fully functional again if the  warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

Further information » [page 116, Traction Control System \(ASR\)](#).

Note

The  warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. The warning light should go out after the vehicle has driven a short distance.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 60.
- If the warning light  » page 36 is displayed simultaneously with the ABS warning light  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of accident.

The rear fog light

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

The warning light  comes on when the rear fog lights are operating » page 59.

Bulb failure

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

The warning light  comes on if a bulb is faulty:

- within a few seconds of the ignition being switched on;
- when a light with a defective bulb is switched on.

The following message may be shown in the MAXI DOT display, for example.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Note

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting have several light bulbs. The indicator light  only lights up if all light bulbs of the licence plate lighting or the parking light (in one rear light) are defective. For this reason, regular check that these light bulbs are working correctly.

Exhaust inspection system

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine can be started immediately after the pre-glow warning light goes out.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  **does not come on at all or lights up continuously.**

If the warning light  begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC fault light (petrol engine)

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

If the warning light  comes on or begins to flash while driving, a fault exists in the engine control unit. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe**  **on page 35 first.**

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

The  warning light comes on if soot has accumulated in the filter.

In order to clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit ➤ , the vehicle should be driven for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out with the 4th or 5th gear (automatic gearbox: in position S) engaged at a speed of at least 60 km/h with engine revolutions of between 1,800 - 2,000 per minute.

The  warning light only goes out once the diesel particulate filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light  does not go out and the warning light  begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

⦿ Diesel particulate filter: Log book!

The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light  also lights up.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

! CAUTION

As long as the warning light  lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

i Note

- We recommend avoiding regularly driving short distances to assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the service life of the filter. A ŠKODA Service Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The indicator light  will come on if the fuel level is less than 7 litres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

⦿ Please refuel. Range: ... km

i Note

The text in the MAXI DOT display only goes out after the vehicle has been refuelled and driven a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe on page 35 first.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

⦿ Error: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, even if one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

- The  warning light comes on for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately another 12 seconds at 2 second intervals.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

⦿ Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the front passenger's front airbag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

- The  warning light comes on for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- switching off the airbag is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the yellow indicator light in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**
 » [page 18](#).

WARNING

When a fault of the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this is to be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre pressure

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

The warning light  lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres.

If the indicator light  flashes, there is a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system. Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  flashes again after re-starting the engine, then the help of a professional service provider is to be sought.

Further information » [page 154, Tyre pressure monitor](#).

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » [page 60](#).

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the warning light  illuminates after the ignition is switched on. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light  comes on.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » [page 141](#).

Traction control (TCS) switched off

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

The ASR is switched off by pressing the button » [page 116](#) and the warning light  illuminates.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.

Turn signal system

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

Either the left  or right  warning light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If a turn signal light fails, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » [page 58, Turn signal and main beam lights](#).

Low beam

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

The warning light  comes on when low beam is selected » [page 56](#).

Fog lights

- **Read and observe  on page 35 first.**

The warning light  comes on when the fog lights are operating » [page 58](#).

Cruise control system

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light  comes on when the cruise control is operating » [page 118](#).

Selector lever lock

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

If the warning light  lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary to be able to move the selector lever from position P or N » [page 107](#).

Main beam

 Read and observe  on page 35 first.

The warning light  comes on when the main beam or headlight flasher are selected » [page 58](#).

Unlocking and locking

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key	42
Replacing the battery in the remote control key	43
Child safety lock	44
Opening/closing the door	44
Locking/unlocking the vehicle without central locking	45
Emergency locking of the doors	45

Vehicle key

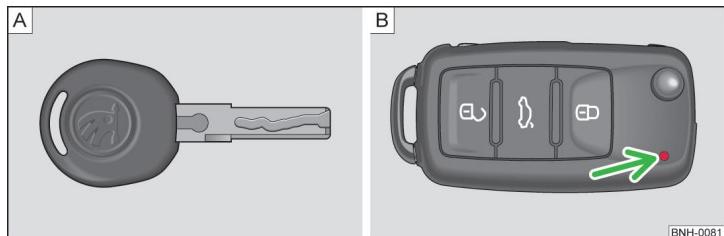


Fig. 25 Key: without/with remote control

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control » [Fig. 25 - A](#) or with radio remote control » [Fig. 25 - B](#).

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is the danger of injury and accidents occurring!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of accident! These individuals would possibly not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!

! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car operating in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at less than 3 metres away [» page 43](#).

! Note

- When leaving the vehicle, always check if this is locked.
- Please contact a specialist garage if you lose a key as they can obtain a new one for you.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

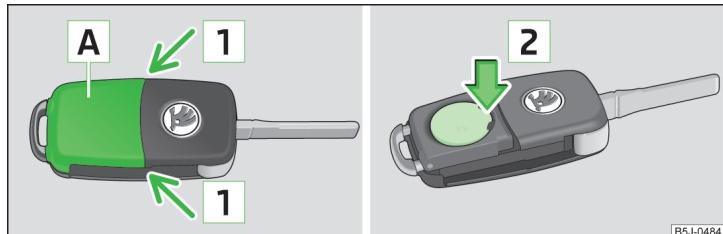


Fig. 26 Remote control key: Remove cover/remove battery

Each remote control key contains a battery located under the cover

A » Fig. 26. The battery needs replacing if red indicator light » Fig. 25 on page 42 - **B** does not go on when you press a button on the remote control key. We recommend having key battery replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of arrows **1** » Fig. 26.
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards in the region of arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
- Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.

! For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Note

- The system has to be synchronised, if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » [page 49](#).
- Replacing the battery in the key a glued decorative cover requires the cover to be destroyed. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Child safety lock

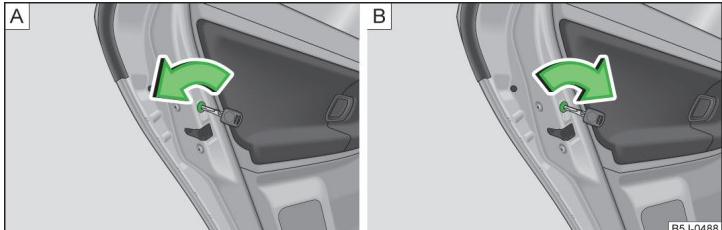


Fig. 27 Switching child safety lock on: for vehicles without or with central locking system

The child safety lock prevents the corresponding rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

- On vehicles without central locking, turn the slot of the lock in the left-hand door anti-clockwise » [Fig. 27 - A](#) and clockwise in the right-hand door.
- On vehicles with central locking, turn the slot of the lock in the left-hand door clockwise » [Fig. 27 - B](#) and anti-clockwise on the right-hand door.

Switching off

- On vehicles without central locking, turn the slot of the lock on the left-hand door clockwise and anti-clockwise on the right-hand door.
- On vehicles with central locking, turn the slot of the lock on the left-hand door anti-clockwise and clockwise on the right-hand door.

Opening/closing the door



Fig. 28 Door handle/door opening lever

Opening from the outside

- Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle [A](#) » [Fig. 28](#) on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

- Pull on door handle [B](#) of the door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

- Grab the pull handle [C](#) and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while the vehicle is being driven – there is a risk of death.
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing sweep – there is a risk of injury.
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – there is a risk of injury.
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!

Locking/unlocking the vehicle without central locking

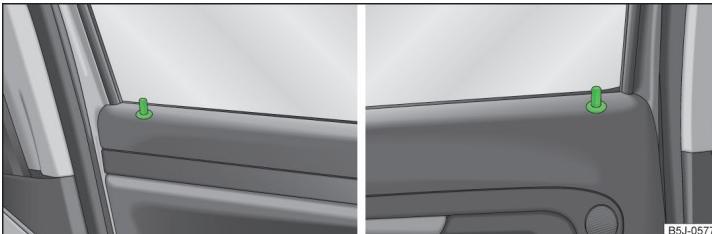


Fig. 29 Securing knob in the front door/rear door

The locking knob » Fig. 29 will move upwards or downwards when you lock or unlock the door.

Unlocking from the outside

- » Unlock the front door with the key » page 47.

Unlocking from the inside

- » Pull on the door opening lever.

Locking from the outside

- » Lock the front door with the key » page 47.

Locking from the inside

- » Push the locking knob » Fig. 29 down.

! WARNING

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!

! Note

- Lock the opened rear doors and front passenger door by closing them and pressing the securing knob.
- It is not possible to lock the opened driver's door using the securing knob. This prevents against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle.

Emergency locking of the doors

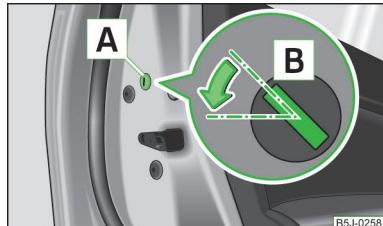


Fig. 30
Rear door: Emergency locking of the door

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the end face of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after the door is opened.

Locking

- » Remove the cover **A** » Fig. 30.
- » Insert the key into the slot **B** and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
- » Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle again, and then opened from the outside.

Central locking system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual settings	46
Safe securing	46
Unlocking the vehicle using the key	47
Locking the vehicle with the key	47
Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside	47

When using central locking or unlocking, all doors are locked or unlocked simultaneously. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the handle above the licence plate » page 51, *Opening/closing*.

Warning light in the driver's door

After locking the vehicle, the warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system » page 46 is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first flashes fast for about 2 seconds, then lights up for about 30 seconds continuously and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the central locking system or in the interior monitor and in the towing protection » page 50. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Convenience operation of windows

The windows can be opened and closed when unlocking and locking the vehicle » page 53.

CAUTION

If the safe securing system is activated» page 46, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Upon failure of the central locking system, only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked using the key. The other doors and the tailgate can be manually locked or unlocked.
 - Emergency locking of the door » page 45.
 - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 51.

Individual settings

 Read and observe  on page 46 first.

Opening a single door

This selection function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

Automatic locking and unlocking

All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button  » page 47.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

Note

Individual settings can be applied in a specialist workshop.

Safe securing

  Read and observe  on page 46 first.

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing system**. The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. It is then not possible to open the doors with the door handle, either from the inside or from the outside.

You will be informed that the safe securing system is activated after the vehicle is locked by the **CHECK DEADLOCK** message on the instrument cluster display. On vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, the display shows **Check deadlock. Log book!**

Switching off

Opening can take place in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the interior monitoring » page 50, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash regularly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

! WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, no-one must be in the car, as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

i Note

This function is only enabled in certain countries.

Unlocking the vehicle using the key

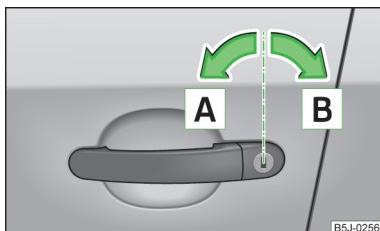


Fig. 31
Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe on page 46 first.

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlocking position) **A** » Fig. 31.
- Pull the door handle and open the door.
- All the doors (only the driver's door on vehicles with anti-theft alarm system) are unlocked.
- The boot lid is then unlocked.
- The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is deactivated.
- The windows open while the key is held in the unlock position.
- The warning light in the driver door stops flashing if the car is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system » page 49.

i Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

Locking the vehicle with the key

Read and observe on page 46 first.

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door opposite to the direction of travel (locking position) **B** » Fig. 31 on page 47.

- All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
- The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
- The windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof close while the key is held in the lock position.
- The safe securing system is immediately activated.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.

i Note

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside



Fig. 32
Centre console: Central locking button

Read and observe on page 46 first.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch » Fig. 32 even if the ignition is not switched on.

Locking all doors and the boot lid

- Press on the button » Fig. 32. The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

- Press on the button » Fig. 32. The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- If the safelock system is switched on » [page 46](#), the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking	48
Synchronization	49

You can use the remote control key to:

- unlock and lock the vehicle,
- unlock boot lid;
- open and close the windows » [page 53](#), *Window convenience operation*.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The system must be initialised by a specialist garage if a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or replaced. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

i Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car operating in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away » [page 43](#).
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking

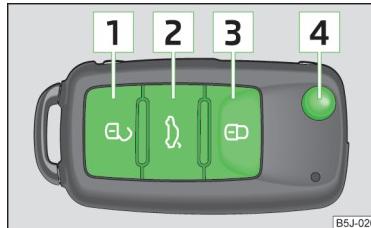


Fig. 33
Remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

- Press button **[1]** » [Fig. 33](#).

Locking the vehicle

- Press button **[3]** » [Fig. 33](#).

Deactivating the safe securing system

- Press button **[3]** » [Fig. 33](#) twice within 2 seconds. Further information » [page 45](#).

Unlocking the boot lid

- Press button **[2]** » [Fig. 33](#). Further information » [page 51](#).

Folding out the key bit

- Press button **[4]** » [Fig. 33](#).

Folding in the key bit

- Press the button **[4]** » [Fig. 33](#) and fold in the key bit.

Unlocking

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button 1 » Fig. 33 and none of the doors or the tailgate are opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system is reactivated. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

In addition, when the car is unlocked, the electrically adjustable seats and exterior mirrors move into the position assigned to this key. The stored setting of driver seat and exterior mirrors is retrieved.

Locking

The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

Note

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- A ŠKODA partner can also activate/deactivate the acoustic signals on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

Synchronization

If the vehicle does not unlock when the remote control is pressed, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are pressed several times outside the operating range of the equipment or if the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Unlock the door with the key within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	49
Interior monitor and towing protection	50

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.
- Before leaving the car, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the electric sliding/tilting roof are properly closed to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles.

Operation

How is the alarm system activated?

The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked with the radio remote control or the key in the driver's door . It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

How is the alarm system deactivated?

The alarm system is deactivated by pressing the ⚡ button on the remote control. The anti-theft alarm system is reactivated if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after transmitting the radio signal.

If the vehicle is unlocked by inserting the key into the driver door, the key must be inserted into the ignition lock and the ignition switched on within 15 seconds of unlocking the door to deactivate the alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:

- bonnet;
- boot lid;
- doors;
- ignition lock;
- Vehicle inclination » page 50;
- Interior of the vehicle » page 50;
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply;
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

How is the alarm switched off?

The alarm is turned off by pressing the  button on the remote control key or switching the ignition on.

Interior monitor and towing protection

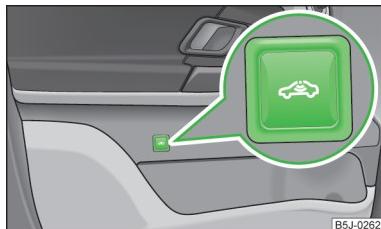


Fig. 34
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the  » Fig. 34 button in the driver's door.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.

Note

- Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing	51
Automatic locking of the boot lid	51
Emergency unlocking	51

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning.
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the tailgate, as otherwise this could crack – there is a risk of injury.

i Note

- After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 1 second and the anti-theft alarm system is activated. This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function of the handle is activated again when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Opening/closing

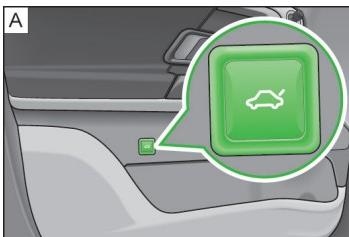


Fig. 35 Unlock the boot lid/boot lid handle

Read and observe on page 50 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, you can open the lid by pushing the handle located above the licence plate.

Opening the boot lid for vehicles without central locking

▶ Press the button in the driver's door » Fig. 35 - A and lift the boot lid in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 35 - B.

Opening the boot lid for vehicles with central locking

▶ Press the handle and open the tailgate in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 35 - B.

Closing

▶ Pull down the tailgate and close it with a gentle swing.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner panelling of the boot lid.

Automatic locking of the boot lid

Read and observe on page 50 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After the activation of the delayed locking, the door can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the key symbol on the remote control key.

Emergency unlocking

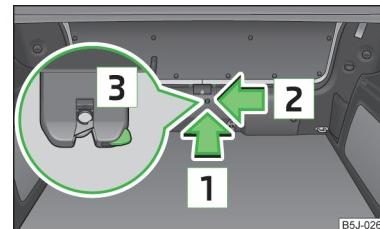


Fig. 36
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

Read and observe on page 50 first.

The boot lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

Unlocking

- ▶ Fold the rear seat backrest forward » [page 67, Rear seats](#).
- ▶ Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 36 as far as the stop.
- ▶ Unlock the lock 3 under the trim in the direction of arrow 2.
- ▶ Open the tailgate.

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the windows	52
Power window force limiter	53
Window convenience operation	53
Operational faults	53

! WARNING

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, do not leave anybody in the vehicle as it is not possible to open the windows from the inside in the event of an emergency.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » [page 53](#). If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- Deactivating the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors is recommended (safety push button) **S** when children are being transported in the rear seats » [Fig. 37 on page 52](#).
- Proceed with caution when closing windows to avoid causing crushing injuries - there is a risk of injury.

! CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Should the windows freeze, first remove the ice » [page 132, Windows and exterior mirrors](#) and only then operate the power windows. Otherwise, the window seal and the power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop and open again by several centimetres.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

节能环保

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

i Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using **A** » [Fig. 37 on page 52](#).
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Opening/closing the windows

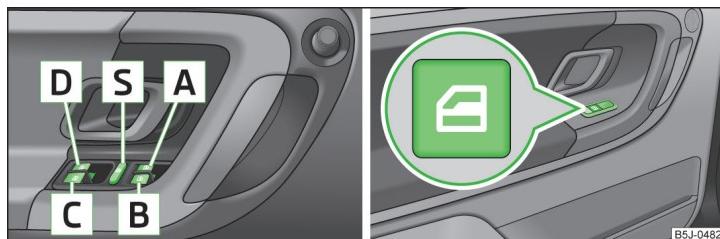


Fig. 37 Buttons on the driver's door/in the rear doors

Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 52](#) first.

Power window buttons » [Fig. 37](#).

- A** Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
- B** Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
- C** Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
- D** Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
- S** Safety pushbutton

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

Opening

► A window is opened by pressing lightly on the relevant button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also open fully automatically if you briefly press the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

► The window is closed by pulling lightly on the relevant button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also close fully automatically if you briefly pull the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch  » Fig. 37. The buttons for the electrical power windows in rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton  again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light  in the safety switch  lights up.

Note

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Power window force limiter

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

The comfort controls of the windows provide the ability to open or close all the windows at once.

Opening can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

- › Press the  button on the remote control key and hold.
- › Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
- › Hold button  » Fig. 37 on page 52 in the opening position.

Closing

- › Press the  button on the remote control key and hold.
- › Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- › Hold Button  » Fig. 37 on page 52 in the closing position.

The movement of the window is immediately stopped by releasing the key or the respective button.

Operational faults

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

Electrical power windows do not operate

If the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected while the window was opened, the electrical power windows will not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows to re-establish the function.

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Pull the top edge of the button in the driver's door and close the window.
- › Release the button.
- › Pull the relevant button upwards again for another approximately 3 seconds and hold.

Operation in winter

In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop and open again by several centimetres.

It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 53.

Electric sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	54
Comfort operation	55
Emergency operation	55

The sliding/tilting roof is operated with the rotary switch »Fig. 38 on page 54 and only works when the ignition is switched on. The control dial has several positions.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be opened, closed and tilted for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as one of the front doors is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism and seal.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not close fully. This is why the rotary switch must be set to position **A** »Fig. 38 on page 54 and pressed forwards for about 10 seconds.

Operation

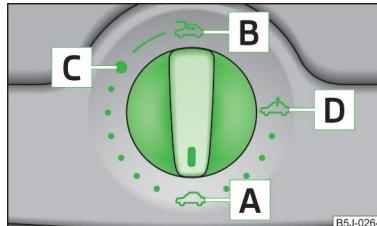


Fig. 38
Control dial for the power sliding/tilting roof

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 54 first.

Comfort position

› Turn the switch to position **C** »Fig. 38.

Open fully

› Turn the switch to position **B** »Fig. 38 and hold it in this position (spring-loaded position).

Tilting roof

› Turn the switch to position **D** »Fig. 38.

Closing

› Turn the switch to position **A** »Fig. 38.

Sun blind

The sun blind is operated manually.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. The sliding/tilting roof can be closed completely without the force limiter by pushing the switch in position **A** »Fig. 38 forwards until the sliding/tilting roof is completely closed »page 54,  in section *Introduction*.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is much less.

Note

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Comfort operation

Read and observe and on page 54 first.

An open sliding/tilting roof can also be closed from the outside.

Press the button on the remote control key and hold or hold the key in the lock cylinder of the driver's door in the locked position » .

The closing operation stops immediately when you release the key or the lock button.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Emergency operation



Fig. 39 Point for positioning screwdriver/opening for positioning the key

Read and observe and on page 54 first.

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed or opened manually if the system is faulty. The emergency operation of the sliding roof is located underneath the glasses storage box » [page 83, Glasses storage box](#).

- » Open the glasses storage box.
- » Carefully insert an approximately 5 mm wide screwdriver into the slot in the positions shown by the arrows » [Fig. 39](#).
- » Carefully fold the glasses storage box downwards by gently pressing down and turning the screwdriver.
- » Insert an Allen key, SW 4, up to the stop into the opening and close or open the sliding/tilting roof.

» Reinstall the glasses storage box by first inserting the plastic plugs and then pushing the entire part upwards.

Note

It is necessary after each emergency operation (using the Allen key) to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position. This is why the rotary switch must be set to position » [Fig. 38 on page 54](#) and pressed forwards for about 10 seconds.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking and low beam lights	56
Headlight beam adjustment	57
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	57
Turn signal and main beam lights	58
Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function	58
Fog lights	58
Foglights with the CORNER function	59
Rear fog light	59
Tourist lights	59
Hazard warning light system	60
Parking lights	60

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on **right-hand drive** vehicles partially differs from that shown in »Fig. 40 on page 56. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

WARNING

- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.
- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet areas are free from condensation after a short time, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up around the edge. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Parking and low beam lights



Fig. 40
Dash panel: Light switch

» **Read and observe Fig. 40 first.**

Light switch positions » Fig. 40.

- » **Switch on the parking light or parking lights on both sides » page 60**
- » **Switch on low beam**
- 0** Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
- ‡** Switch on the front fog lamp » page 58
- ‡‡** Switch on the rear fog light » page 59

Note

- An audible warning signal will sound if the light switch is in the » or » position, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened. The audible warning signal is switched off by means of the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off), however, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- **Always turn the light switch to the 0 position if you are leaving the vehicle and don't want to use the parking light.**

Headlight beam adjustment



Fig. 41
Dash panel: Lights and visibility

Read and observe on page 56 first.

Turning the rotary switch » Fig. 41 from position -- to 3 gradually adjusts the headlight beam thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the rotary switch correspond approximately to the following car load.

- Front seats occupied, boot empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe on page 56 first.

Switching on the daytime running lights

- › Turn the light switch to position 0 » Fig. 40 on page 56.

Activating/deactivating the daytime running lights function

- › Activate and deactivate the daytime running lights by fitting/removing the fuse with the appropriate ampere rating for daytime running lights » page 167, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Deactivating on vehicles with the START-STOP system

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › At the same time, pull the turn signal light stalk » Fig. 42 on page 58 towards the steering wheel, push it downwards, and hold it in this position.
- › Switch on the ignition - wait until the left-turn signal light flashes 4x.
- › Switch off the ignition - an audible signal sounds which confirms the deactivation of the daylight driving lights.
- › Release the turn signal stalk.

Activating on vehicles with the START-STOP system

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › At the same time, pull the turn signal light stalk » Fig. 42 on page 58 towards the steering wheel, push it upwards, and hold it in this position.
- › Switch on the ignition - wait until the right-turn signal light flashes 4x.
- › Switch off the ignition - an audible signal sounds which confirms the activation of the daylight driving lights.
- › Release the turn signal stalk.

On vehicles with separate lights for daylight driving lights in the fog lights or in the front bumper, the parking lights and the licence plate light do not come on when activating the function daylight driving lights (neither front nor rear).

If the vehicle is not equipped with separate lights for daylight driving lights, the combination of the low beam, the parking lights (front and rear) including the licence plate light is used as daylight driving lights.

Note

In vehicles with separate lights for daylight driving lights (in the bumper below the main headlights) these lights also serve as side lights.

Turn signal and main beam lights

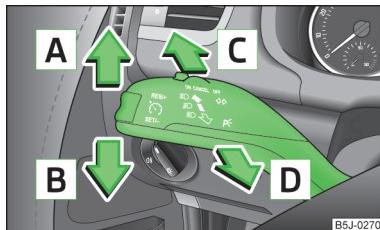


Fig. 42
Stalk: turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe on page 56 first.

The parking light is controlled with the control stalk » page 60.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 42.

- A** Switch on right turn signal
- B** Switch on left turn signal
- C** Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position)
- D** Switch off main beam and headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

When the left or right turn signal is on, the or warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Turn signal for changing lanes - to flash only briefly, move the **stalk** up or down to the pressure point only and **hold it in this position**.

Convenience turn signal

If you wish to flash three times only, briefly push the **stalk** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Note

- The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.
- The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.
- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on.

- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function

Read and observe on page 56 first.

For a better cornering illumination, the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are set in the optimal position in line with the vehicle speed and the steering angle.

WARNING

If the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are faulty, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. Thus the illuminated length of the road is shortened. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Fog lights



Fig. 43
Dash panel: Light switch

Read and observe on page 56 first.

Switching on/off

- › First turn the light switch » Fig. 43 to position or .
- › Pull the light switch to position **1**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 35.

Foglights with the CORNER function

Read and observe  on page 56 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on the relevant side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- The engine is running.
- The vehicle is stopped or is travelling at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- The low beam is switched on.
- The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- The fog lights are not switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.

Rear fog light

Read and observe  on page 56 first.

Switching on/off

- First turn the light switch » Fig. 43 on page 58 to position  or .
- Pull the light switch to position .

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights » page 58, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position  or  and is pulled out directly to the position . This switch can only be pulled into one position.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 35.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

Tourist lights

Read and observe  on page 56 first.

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles. When the mode "tourist light" is active, the side to side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

Activating tourist light

Before activating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met.

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in position **0**), control dial for headlamp beam adjustment in the **--** position, no gear engaged or selector lever in the **N** position (automatic gearbox), tourist light deactivated.

- Switch on the ignition.

Within 10 seconds of the ignition being switched on:

- Turn the light switch to the  position » page 56, *Parking and low beam lights*.
- Engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to the **R** position (automatic gearbox),
- Turn the headlamp beam adjustment dial from **--** to **3** » page 57.

Deactivating tourist light

Before deactivating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met.

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in position **0**), control dial for headlamp beam adjustment in the **3** position, no gear engaged or selector lever in the **N** position (automatic gearbox), tourist light activated.

- Switch on the ignition.

Within 10 seconds of the ignition being switched on:

- Turn the light switch to the  position » page 56, *Parking and low beam lights*.
- Engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to the **R** position (automatic gearbox),
- Turn the headlamp beam adjustment dial from **3** to **--** » page 57.

¹⁾ If both switch on versions are conflicting, for example if the steering wheel is turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Further information » page 114, Headlights.

i Note

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning light  flashes for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 44
Dash panel: Hazard warning light system button

 Read and observe  on page 56 first.

» Press the  » Fig. 44 button.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

! CAUTION

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic jam.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

 Read and observe  on page 56 first.

Switching on the parking light

» Switch off the ignition.

» Pull the turn signal stalk » Fig. 42 on page 58 upwards or downwards - the side light on the right or left side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side lights on both sides

» Turn the light switch » Fig. 40 on page 56 to the  position and lock the vehicle.

i Note

- The parking light  can only be activated if the ignition is switched off.
- If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior lighting - version 1	60
Interior lighting - version 2	61
Rear interior light	61
Illuminated storage compartment on the passenger side	61
Luggage compartment light	61

Interior lighting - version 1

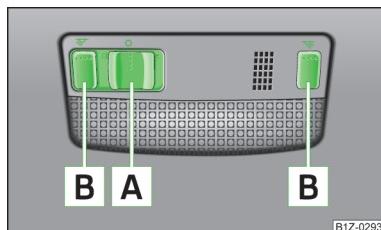


Fig. 45
Interior lighting - version 1

Positions of sliding switch  » Fig. 45.

-  Switch on
-  Switch off (middle position)
-  Control by the door contact switch

The reading lights can be turned on or off by pressing switch  » Fig. 45.

If control of the lights by the door contact switch is enabled (switch **A** » Fig. 45 is in the  position), the light will come on when one of the following occurs.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

If control of the lights by the door contact switch is enabled (switch **A** » Fig. 45 in the  position), the light will go off when one of the following occurs.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If a door remains open, or if switch **A** » Fig. 45 is in the  position, the interior light goes out after 10 minutes to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

Interior lighting - version 2

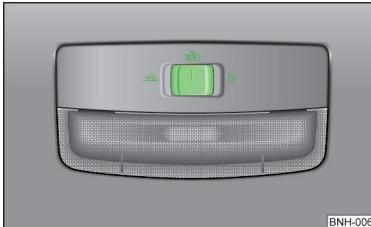


Fig. 46
Interior lighting - version 2

Slide switch positions » Fig. 46.

-  Switch on
-  Switch off
-  Control by the door contact switch (middle position)

The same principles apply for interior lighting version 2 as for » page 60, *Interior lighting - version 1*.

Rear interior light



Fig. 47
Interior lights at the rear

Press the switch » Fig. 47 to turn the light on or off.

Illuminated storage compartment on the passenger side

- When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.
- The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

Luggage compartment light

The light comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the tailgate remains open for more than 10 minutes, the luggage compartment light switches off automatically.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heating	62
Sun visors	62

Rear window heating



Fig. 48
Button for rear window heater

- The rear window heater is switched on or off by pressing the button » Fig. 48, the warning light in the switch comes on or goes out.

The rear window heater can only be switched on when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after approximately 7 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 112, *Saving electrical energy*.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 150, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Sun visors

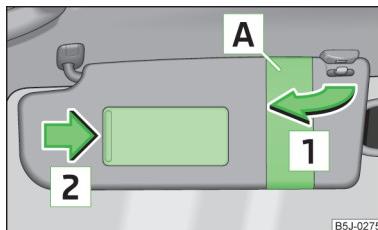


Fig. 49
Sun visor: swivelling out

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 49.

The vanity mirrors in the sun visors are provided with covers. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The purpose of the strap **A** is to store small, light objects, such as a notepad, etc.

! WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wiper and washer	63
Headlight cleaning system	63
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	64
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	64

The windscreen wipers and the windscreen washer system only operate when the ignition is switched on.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 141.

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 64.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

! CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreens. If the windscreens wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreens, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
 - If the ignition is switched off while the windscreens wipers are switched on, the windscreens wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreens wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
 - Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
 - Remove snow and ice from the windscreens wipers before driving.
 - If the windscreens wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreens.

i Note

- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
 - The content of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is 3.5 litres. On vehicles fitted with the headlight cleaning system, the volume is around 5.4 litres.
 - The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreens cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

Windscreen wiper and washer

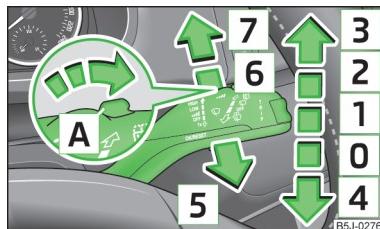


Fig. 50
**Operating stalk: Windscreen
wipers and washer settings**

 Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 50

- 0** Wipers off
 - 1** Interval windscreen wiping
 - 2** Slow windscreen wiping
 - 3** Rapid windscreen wiping
 - 4** Single windscreen wipe (spring-loaded position)
 - 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-loaded position)
 - 6** Wiping the rear window (the wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
 - 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-loaded position)
 - A** Switch for setting the desired interval between the individual windscreen wipes (**1** Interval windscreen wiping)

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreens

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later.

Releasing the lever will stop the windscreen washer while the wipers continue for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period the windscreen has been sprayed).

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the wiper wipes somewhat later.

Releasing the lever will stop the washer while the wipers continue for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period the window has been sprayed).

The lever will stay in position after releasing it [6]

Headlight cleaning system

 Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The headlights are sprayed briefly if the low beam or main beam are switched on and the windscreen wiper stalk is pulled to position 5 » Fig. 50 on page 63. To clean the headlights, the windshield is also sprayed after every five squirts.

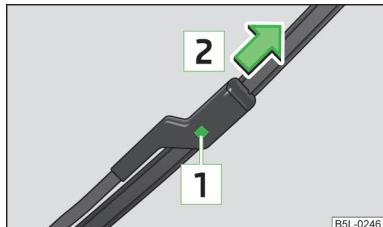
You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 132, Headlight lenses](#).

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – there is risk of damage.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Read and observe 1 and 2 on page 62 first.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreens.
- Press the locking button 1 » Fig. 51 and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow 2.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreens.

Windshield wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windshield by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the windshield wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

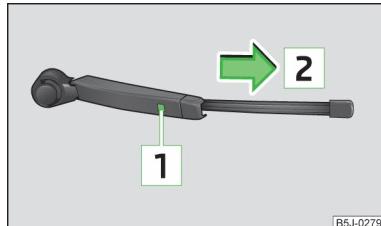


Fig. 52
Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe 1 and 2 on page 62 first.

Removing the wiper blade

- Raise the wiper arm away from the window » Fig. 52.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the direction of the wiper arm.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in until it latches on the stop.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreens.

Rear window

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually dimmed rear-view mirror	65
Exterior mirrors	65▶

! WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, condensation or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Manually dimmed rear-view mirror

 Read and observe  on page 65 first.

Basic setting

➢ Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror towards the windshield.

Dimming mirror

➢ Pull the lever on the lower edge of the mirror away from the windscreens.

Exterior mirrors

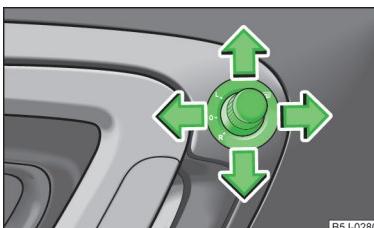


Fig. 53
Inner part of door: Knob for the
mirrors

B5J-0280

 Read and observe  on page 65 first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror
- 0 Switch off mirror control
-  Mirror heater

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 53.

The movement of the mirror surface follows the movement of the rotary knob.

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. Restore it to its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

! Note

- The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the power setting function fails at any time, the exterior mirrors can be set by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your specialist garage if there is a fault with the electrical adjustment of the exterior mirrors.

Seats and storage

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats - Version 1	66
Adjusting the front seats - Variant 2	66
Front seat heating	67

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following reasons.

- Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
- A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
- Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.

! WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – there is the risk of an accident.
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat other than objects (e.g. child safety seat) intended for this purpose – there is the risk of an accident.

! Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats - Version 1

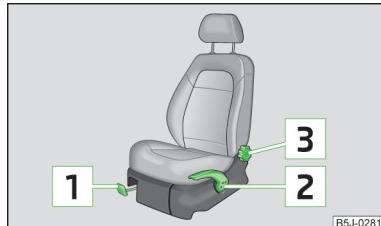


Fig. 54
Control elements on the seat

➤ Read and observe ! on page 66 first.

Adjusting a seat fore and aft

- Pull lever [1] » Fig. 54 up and push the seat into the desired position.
- Release the lever [1] and push the seat until the lock clicks into place.

Adjusting height of seat

- To lift the seat, pull or pump lever [2] » Fig. 54 upwards.
- To lower the seat, push or pump the lever [2] downwards.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- To adjust the angle of the backrest, relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn handwheel [3] » Fig. 54.

Adjusting the front seats - Variant 2



Fig. 55
Control elements on the seat

➤ Read and observe ! on page 66 first.

Adjusting a seat fore and aft

- Pull the lever (in the middle) [1] » Fig. 55 up and push the seat to the desired position.

➤ Release the lever **1** and push the seat until the lock clicks into place.

Adjusting height of seat

- To lift the seat, pull or pump lever **2** » Fig. 55 upwards.
- To lower the seat, push or pump the lever **2** downwards.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve the load on the seat backrest (do not lean on it), pull the lever **3** » Fig. 55 towards the rear and set the desired angle of the seat backrest with the back.
- After releasing the lever **3**, the seat backrest will remain in the set position.

Front seat heating



Fig. 56
Rocker switch for front seat heating

📘 Read and observe **!** on page 66 first.

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

- Switch the front seat heating to 25 % or 100 % power by pressing rocker switch at position **1** or **2** » Fig. 56.
- To switch off the heating shift the rocker switch into the horizontal position.

! WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

! CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points to avoid damaging the heating elements for the seat heaters.
- Do not turn on the seat heater if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- If additional seat covers or protective covers are attached to the seats, do not turn on the seat heater - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 135.

! Note

- The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 150, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Rear seats

📘 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Folding the seat backrest forwards	67
Folding the seat cushions forwards, removing	68

Folding the seat backrest forwards

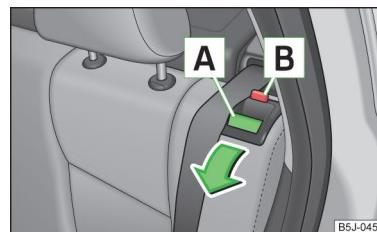


Fig. 57
Unlock the seat backrest

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

- Before folding the rear seats forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded rear seats.
- Unlock the seat backrest by pressing the securing knob **A** » Fig. 57 and fold it forwards.
- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest.
- Fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Folding backwards

- Push the head restraint into the slightly lifted seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest » **I**.
- Make sure that the red pin **B** is hidden.

! WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking - there is a risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

! Note

On vehicles with an installed net partition housing, first fold back the left seat rest followed by the right one.

Folding the seat cushions forwards, removing

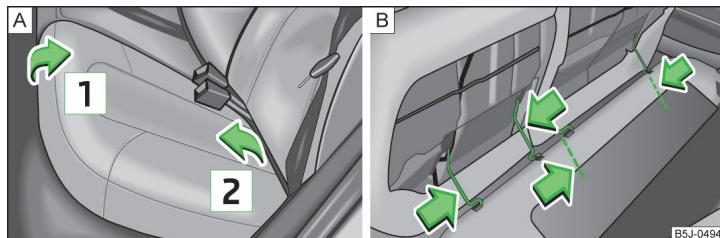


Fig. 58 Folding the seat cushions forwards and removing

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward or by removing the rear seats.

Folding forward

- Pull up the seat squab in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 58 and fold forwards in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Removing

- Fold the seat cushion forward.
- Press the wire loops in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 58 - **B** and remove the seat squab from its bracket.

Fitting

- Press the wire loop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 58 - **B** and fit it into the bracket.
- Fold the seat cushion back into its original position.

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the head restraints _____ 69

Storing the head restraints in the seat squabs _____ 69

Adjusting the head restraints

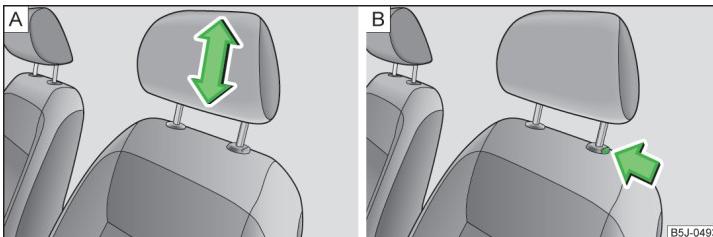


Fig. 59 Head restraint: adjusting/removing

Setting the height

- Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 59 - [A].
- To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 59 - [B] with one hand and push the head restraint down with the other hand.

Removing/installing

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- Press the locking button in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 59 - [B] and pull the head restraint out.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants » page 7.

! WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - there is a risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

Storing the head restraints in the seat squabs

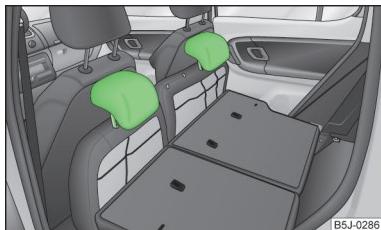


Fig. 60
Rear seats: Inserting head restraints in the seat cushions

The rear head restraints can be inserted into the corresponding holes in the folded seat squabs » Fig. 60.

Boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles	70
Fastening elements	70
Folding hooks	71
Fixing nets	71
Boot cover	71
Further positions of the luggage compartment cover	72
Retractable luggage compartment cover (Fabia Estate)	72

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the fixing net » page 70.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg ".

! WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants - there is a risk of death.
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be shifted - there is a risk of an accident. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- Items carried in the luggage compartment must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward under sudden driving manoeuvres or braking - there is a risk of injury.
- When transporting fastened objects which are sharp and dangerous in the boot that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 9, *Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle - risk of poisoning.
- Under no circumstances, should the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle be exceeded - there is the risk of an accident.
- Never transport people in the boot!

! CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

i Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 152, *Tyre service life*.

Class N1 vehicles

■ Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

The proper functioning of the electrical system is essential for the safe operation of the vehicle. It is important to ensure that it is not damaged during modifications or when loading or unloading the luggage compartment.

Fastening elements

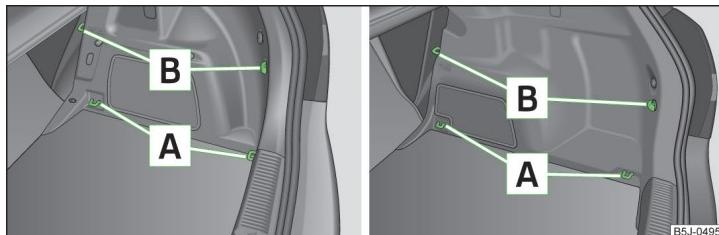


Fig. 61 Boot: Lashing eyes and fastening elements

■ Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

The following fastening elements are found in the luggage compartment » Fig. 61.

- [A] Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
- [B] Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

i Note

The upper front lashing eyes are located underneath the folding rear seat backrest » Fig. 61.

Folding hooks

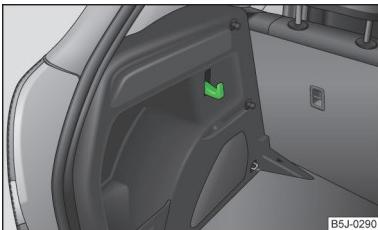


Fig. 62
Boot: folding hooks

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 70 first.

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot » Fig. 62.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Fixing nets

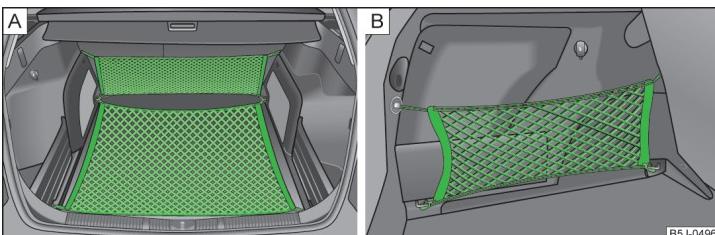


Fig. 63 Fixing net: double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net/double vertical pockets

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 70 first.

Fixing examples for a fixing net as a horizontal pocket, floor fixing net » Fig. 63 - **A** and a horizontal pocket » Fig. 63 - **B**.

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured adequately – there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.

Boot cover

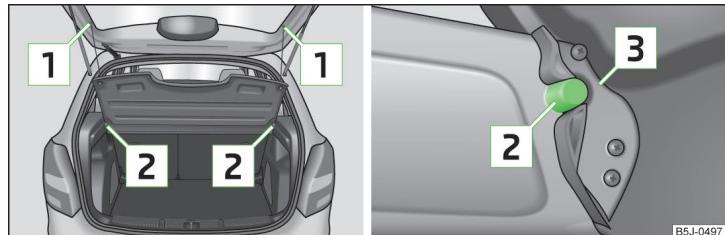


Fig. 64 Removing the boot cover

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 70 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you wish to transport bulky goods.

Removing cover

- Unhook support straps **1** » Fig. 64.
- Remove the cover from the holders **2** by lightly knocking on the underside of the cover in the area between the holders.

Installing the cover

- Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
- Place the recesses of the cover **3** » Fig. 64 over the holders **2** in the side trim panel.
- Interlock the cover by lightly knocking on the top side of the cover in the area between the holders.
- Hook the support straps **1** on the boot lid.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

! CAUTION

When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.

- The recesses in the cover **[3]** » Fig. 64 must lock in the holders in the side trim panel **[2]**.
- The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
- The cover must not be jammed in the seal of the boot lid when it is in the opened position.
- There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

i Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the boot cover.

Further positions of the luggage compartment cover

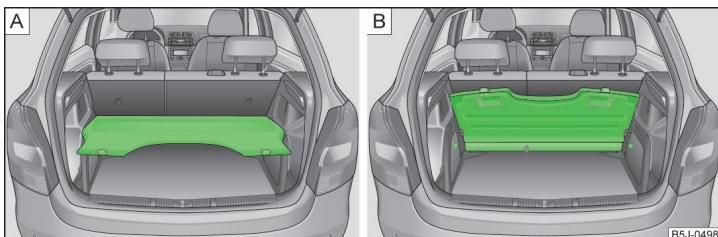


Fig. 65 The luggage compartment cover: Stowed in the lower position/behind the rear seats

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 70 first.

The luggage compartment cover can be fitted to the following positions:

- In the lower position on the support elements » Fig. 65 - **[A]** » **!**
- Behind the rear seats » Fig. 65 - **[B]**.

! CAUTION

In this position » Fig. 65 - **[A]** the luggage compartment cover is designed for small objects up to a weight of 2.5 kg.

Retractable luggage compartment cover (Fabia Estate)

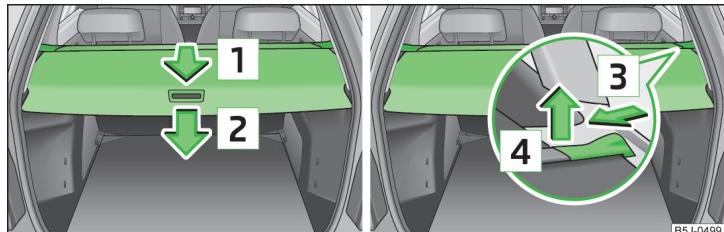


Fig. 66 Boot: foldable boot cover/removing foldable boot cover

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 70 first.

Pulling out

- Pull the retractable luggage compartment cover in direction of arrow **[1]** » Fig. 66 as far as the stop into the secured position.

Retracting

- Press the cover in the handle area in the direction of the arrow **[2]**, and the cover automatically rolls up into position.

Removing

- The fully folded luggage compartment cover can be removed to transport bulky goods by pressing on the side of the cross rod in the direction of the arrow **[3]** and taking it out by moving it in the direction of the arrow **[4]**.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Fabia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dividing up the luggage compartment with variable loading floor 73

Removing and refitting the variable loading floor 73

Removing and installing carrier rails 74

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

i Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Dividing up the luggage compartment with variable loading floor

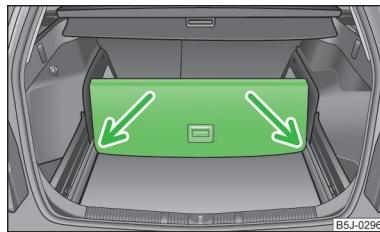


Fig. 67
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

Read and observe **!** on page 73 first.

Lift up the part with the grip and secure it by sliding it into the grooves marked with the arrows » Fig. 67.

Removing and refitting the variable loading floor

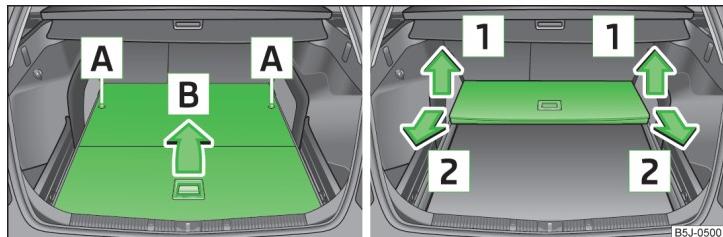


Fig. 68 Fold up variable loading floor/remove

Read and observe **!** on page 73 first.

Removing

- Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the securing bolts **A** around 180° anticlockwise » Fig. 68.
- Fold up the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **B**.
- Fold up the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 68 and remove by pulling in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Fitting

- Fold up the variable loading floor and place it on the carrier rails.
- Fold out the variable loading floor.
- Lock the variable loading floor by turning the locking bolt **A** to the right by approx. 180°.

! WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when fitting the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Removing and installing carrier rails

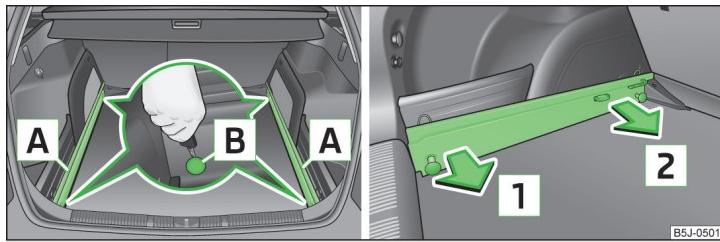


Fig. 69 Slacken check points/remove carrier rails

Read and observe **1** on page 73 first.

Removing

- Undo the securing points **B** » Fig. 69 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
- Grasp the carrier rail **A** at position **1** and slacken it by pulling in the direction of arrow. You can take out the removable storage compartments in order to facilitate the removal » page 84, *Storage compartments in the boot*.
- Grasp the carrier rail **A** at position **2** and slacken it by pulling in the direction of arrow.
- The carrier rail on the other side of the luggage compartment can be removed in the same way.

Fitting

- Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
- Press the two securing points **B** » Fig. 69 on each carrier rail to the stop.
- Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

! WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when fitting the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Net partition (Fabia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition behind the rear seats	74
Using the net partition behind the front seats	75
Removing and refitting the net partition housing	75

! WARNING

- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking - there is a risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.
- Make sure that the transverse rod is inserted into the mounts **C** » Fig. 70 on page 74 or » Fig. 71 on page 75 in the forward position.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

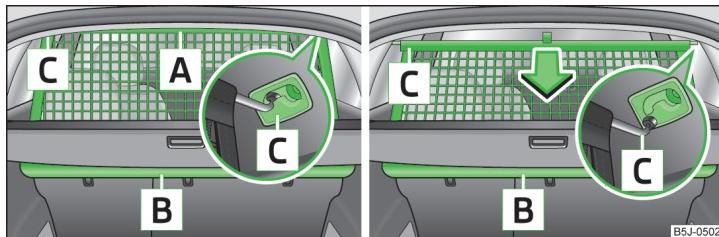


Fig. 70 Extending/retracting the net partition

Read and observe **1** on page 74 first.

Extending

- Open the rear right door.
- Fold down the rear seat backrests slightly forwards, which makes it possible to clear the access for removing the net partition.

- ▶ Pull the net partition by tab **A** » Fig. 70 out of the housing **B** in the direction of mounts **C**.
- ▶ Insert the transverse rod into one of the mounts **C** and push forwards.
- ▶ Insert the transverse rod into the mount **C** on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.
- ▶ Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.

Retracting

- ▶ Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts **C** » Fig. 70.
- ▶ Hold the transverse rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.

If you wish to use the entire boot, the foldable boot cover can be removed » page 72.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

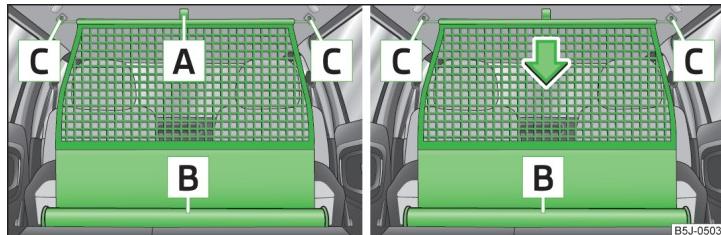


Fig. 71 Extending/retracting the net partition

Read and observe **!** on page 74 first.

Extending

- ▶ Open the rear right door.
- ▶ Fold the seat cushions and rear seat rests forward.
- ▶ Pull the net partition by tab **A** » Fig. 71 out of the housing **B** in the direction of mounts **C**.
- ▶ Insert the transverse rod into one of the mounts **C** and push forwards.
- ▶ Insert the transverse rod into the mount **C** on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.

Retracting

- ▶ Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts **C** » Fig. 71.
- ▶ Hold the transverse rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.
- ▶ Fold the rear seats back into their original position.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

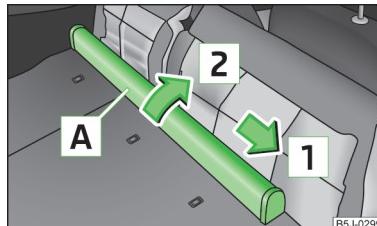


Fig. 72
Rear seats: Net partition housing

Read and observe **!** on page 74 first.

Removing

- ▶ Open the rear right door.
- ▶ Fold the seat cushions and rear seat backrests forward - first the left and then the right backrest.
- ▶ Push the net partition housing **A** » Fig. 72 in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove it from the mount on the right seat back in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Fitting

- ▶ Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- ▶ Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** as far as the stop.
- ▶ Fold the rear seats back into their original position.

Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install cross member	76
Install bicycle carrier	76
Put bicycle into the bicycle carrier	77
Secure the stability of the bicycles with a belt	77

! WARNING

When transporting bicycles, ensuring the safety of the passengers is paramount.

! CAUTION

Take care handling the bicycle - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Install cross member

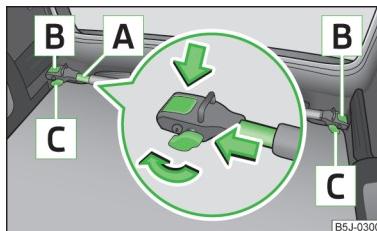


Fig. 73
Install cross member

Read and observe ! and ! on page 76 first.

- Remove the rollable luggage compartment cover » page 72; if necessary we recommend you remove the net partition » page 75.
- Remove the head rests from the rear seat rests and fold the rear seats forward » page 67.
- Undo the securing screws [C] » Fig. 73 and remove a little to unlock the retainers [B].
- Place the cross member [A] with the fixed part onto the left lashing eye and then place it on the right lashing eye with the removable part of the cross member [A].
- Press the holders [B] until they latch. Tighten the securing screws [C].

Check how well the cross member is fastened by pulling on it.

Install bicycle carrier

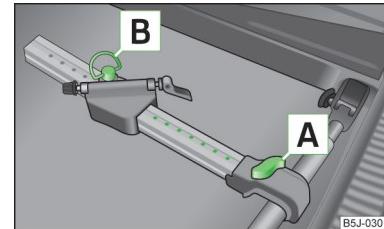


Fig. 74
Install bicycle carrier

Read and observe ! and ! on page 76 first.

- Position the approved bicycle carrier on the cross member.
- Remove bolt [A] » Fig. 74 a little and push the frame side rail (aluminium part) towards the cross member until the socket latches.
- Insert the screw [A] into the nut.
- Undo the screw [B] on the movable part of the bicycle carrier and unscrew.
- Place the movable part of the fixture, depending on the size of the vehicle, in one of the possible positions so that the bicycle does not touch the boot lid. We recommend to place the moveable part of the fixture in such a position that 7 holes are visible between the screw [A] and the moveable part.
- Insert the screw [B] into the desired position and tighten.

Put bicycle into the bicycle carrier

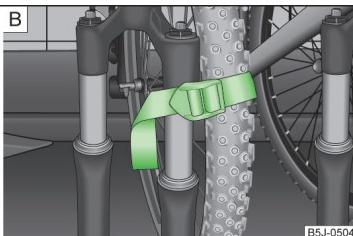
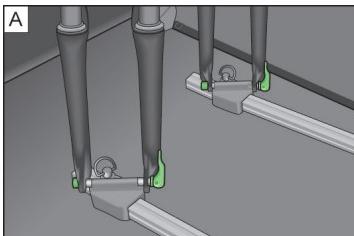


Fig. 75 Put in the bicycle/example fastening the front wheel

Read and observe and on page 76 first.

- Remove the front wheel of the bicycle before installing it.
- Slacken the quick tension jack on the fixing axle of the bicycle carrier and adjust according to the width of the bicycle fork.
- Place the bicycle fork on the fixing axle and tighten with the quick release lever » Fig. 75 - [A].
- Position the left pedal of the bicycle forward, in order to attach the front wheel more easily.
- Undo bolt [A] » Fig. 74 on page 76 and push the bicycle carrier to the left together with the mounted bicycle to prevent a collision between the handlebars and the side window of the luggage compartment.
- Carefully guide the boot lid downwards without letting go of it. Check whether there is sufficient room between the steering bars and the rear window. If necessary, adjust the position of the movable part of the bicycle carrier to prevent a collision » page 76.
- It is best to store the removed front wheel between the left crank and the bicycle frame, attach it with a strap to the front fork » Fig. 75 - [B] or to one of the fixing points.
- The second carrier is installed and the bicycle is secured in a similar way.

Secure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

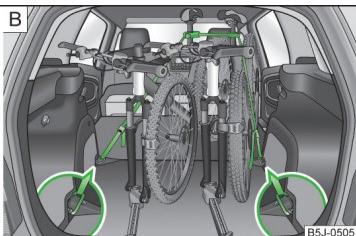
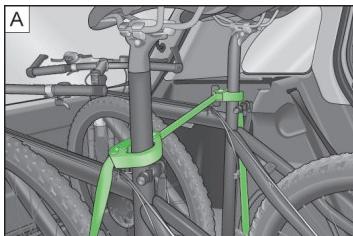


Fig. 76 Securing bicycles

Read and observe and on page 76 first.

- To slacken the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.
- Position the clamp with the rubber part to the front (in direction of travel) as low down on the seat post as possible and lock it » Fig. 76 - [A].
- When transporting two bicycles, stretch the belt » Fig. 76 - [A] between the saddles by moving the bicycles apart.
- Hook the carabiners on the ends of the belt into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats » Fig. 76 - [B].
- Pull the belt through the tensioning clasps on both sides in turn.
- If necessary, you can correct the position of the bicycles in the vehicle.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points	78
Roof load	78

! WARNING

- The items being transported on the roof rack must be reliably attached – there is the risk of an accident.
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- The handling properties of your vehicle change when you transport heavy or bulky items on the roof rack system as a result of the centre of gravity being shifted and the greater area exposed to the wind – there is the risk of an accident. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- The fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed when handling roof racks.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

i Note

If the vehicle is not factory-equipped with a roof rack, it can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Attachment points

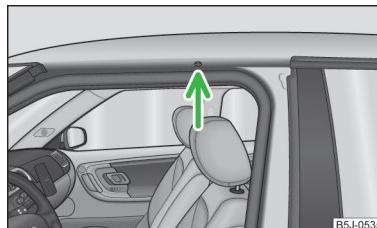


Fig. 77
Attachment points for roof bars

Read and observe ! and ■ on page 78 first.

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ■ on page 78 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Cupholders	79
Ashtray	79
Cigarette lighter	80
12-volt power outlet	80
Clothes hook	81
Car park ticket holder	81▶

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down while you are driving (under acceleration or when cornering) and could distract you from the traffic - there is a risk of an accident.
- Make sure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell while you are driving. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays.

Cupholders

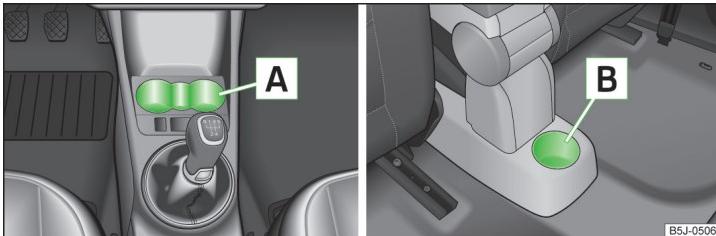


Fig. 78 Cup holder

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the recesses **A** » Fig. 78.

One beverage container can be placed into the recess **B**.

! WARNING

- Never put hot cups in the cup holder. They may spill as the vehicle moves - there is a risk of scalding.
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or the vehicle is in collision.
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Ashtray

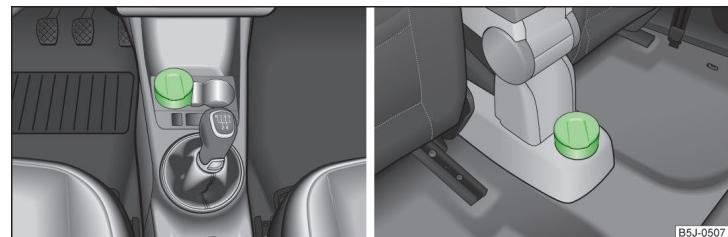


Fig. 79 Centre console: Ashtray at the front/rear

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !

Removing

- Pull the ashtray » Fig. 79 out and up.

Fitting

- Insert the ashtray vertically.

! WARNING

Never put flammable objects in the ashtray – there is a risk of fire.

! CAUTION

Do not hold the ashtray by the cover when removing it – there is a risk of it breaking.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 80
Centre console: Cigarette lighter

Read and observe **on page 79 first.**

Operation

- Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 80.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the igniter and burn themselves.

Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » [page 80](#).
- Further information » [page 127, Services, modifications and technical alterations](#).

12-volt power outlet

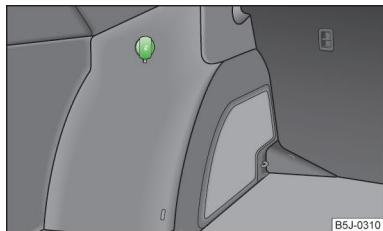


Fig. 81
Boot: 12-Volt power socket

Read and observe **on page 79 first.**

The 12-volt electrical outlet (hereinafter referred to only as a socket) is located in the front center console » [Fig. 80 on page 80](#) and in the luggage compartment » [Fig. 81](#).

Use

- Remove the cover from power socket or cigarette lighter, or open the cover for the power socket.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » .

Further information » [page 127, Services, modifications and technical alterations](#).

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.

- Connecting electrical components when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle - there is a risk of the battery discharging.
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Clothes hook

Read and observe on page 79 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
- Only use the hooks for hanging light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Car park ticket holder

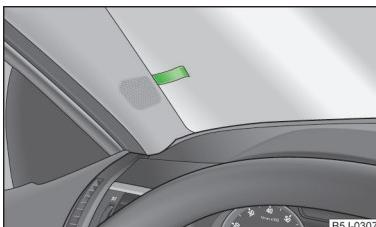


Fig. 82
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

Read and observe on page 79 first.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartments

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storage compartments on the front passenger side	82
Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side	82
Storage compartment on the driver's side	82
Map pockets in the front seats	82
Glasses storage box	83
Stowage compartment in centre console	83
Stowage compartment underneath the front passenger seat	83
Front armrest with storage compartment	84
Storage compartments in the doors	84
Storage compartments in the boot	84
Flexible storage compartment	85

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down while you are driving (under acceleration or when cornering) and could distract you from the traffic - there is a risk of an accident.
- Make sure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell while you are driving. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal - there is a risk of an accident.

Storage compartments on the front passenger side

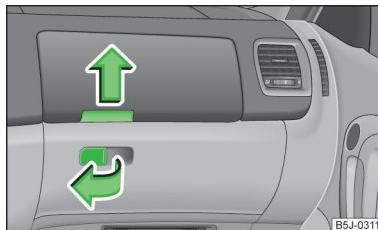


Fig. 83
Dash panel: Storage compartments on the front passenger side

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

Open/close

- Pull the cover handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 83 and fold down the cover.
- Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

A pin holder is located inside the lower flap.

! WARNING

The storage compartments must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side

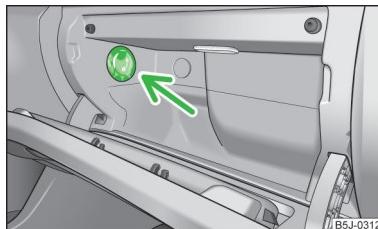


Fig. 84
Storage compartment: Using cooling system

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

- Use the rotary switch » Fig. 84 to open and close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 85
Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

The open stowage compartment below the light switch » Fig. 85.

Map pockets in the front seats



Fig. 86
Front seat rests: Map pockets

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

Map pockets are located on the rear of the seat backrests » Fig. 86.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets - risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Do not put any large items such as bottles or sharp objects into the map pockets, as the pockets and the seat covers could be damaged.

Glasses storage box

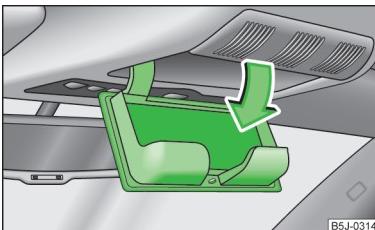


Fig. 87
Detail of the headliner: Glasses storage box

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

- Press on the bar in the cover of the glasses storage. The compartment folds down » Fig. 87.

! WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed.

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they may be damaged.
- The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

Stowage compartment in centre console

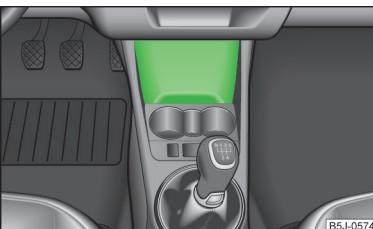


Fig. 88
Centre console: Stowage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

The open stowage compartment in the centre console » Fig. 88.

Stowage compartment underneath the front passenger seat

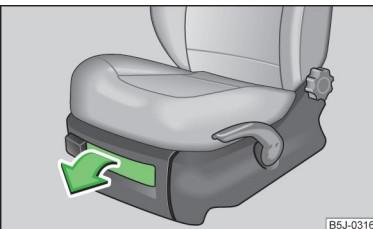


Fig. 89
Front seat: Stowage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

- Pull the handle to open the lid » Fig. 89.
- When closing the lid, hold the handle until the compartment is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1 kg. in weight.

Front armrest with storage compartment

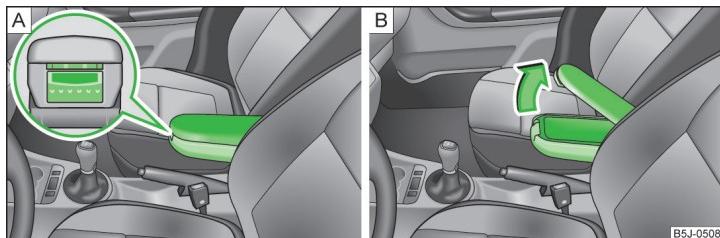


Fig. 90 Armrest: Storage compartment/open storage compartment

Read and observe on page 81 first.

Fold the armrest forwards

- Press the lower button on the end of the armrest » Fig. 90 - **A**.
- Fold the arm rest forward and release the button again.

Opening the storage compartment

- Press the upper button and open the cover of the stowage compartment upwards » Fig. 90 - **B**.

Note

The moving space of the arms can be restricted if the armrest is folded forwards. In city traffic the armrest should not be folded forwards.

Storage compartments in the doors

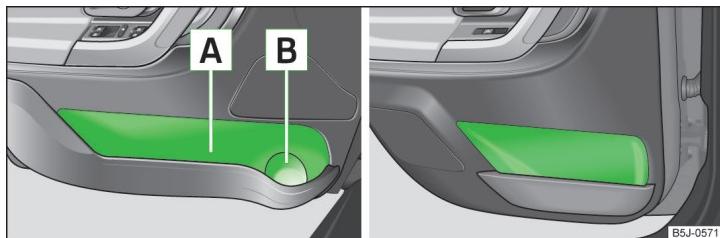


Fig. 91 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

Read and observe on page 81 first.

There is a bottle holder at **B** » Fig. 91 of the pocket in the front doors.

WARNING

Use the section **A** » Fig. 91 of the door pocket only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Storage compartments in the boot

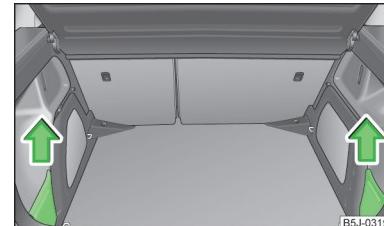


Fig. 92
Boot: Storage compartments

Read and observe on page 81 first.

The cover for the side compartment can be removed, thus enlarging the boot.

- Grasp the top part of the cover and carefully remove it in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92.

CAUTION

The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.

Flexible storage compartment

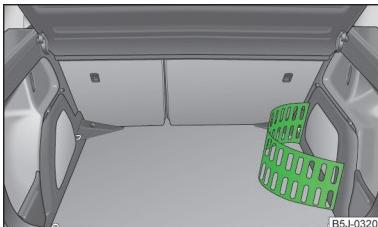


Fig. 93
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe **on page 81 first.**

The flexible storage compartment » Fig. 93 can be fitted to the right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

Fitting

- Insert both ends of the flexible storage compartment into the openings of the right side trim panel of the boot and push it downwards until it locks.

Removing

- Grasp the flexible storage compartment on the two upper corners.
- Press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
- Remove by pulling towards you.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Note

If the variable loading floor » page 73 is installed in the luggage compartment, no flexible storage compartment can be installed.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets	86
Using the air conditioning system economically	86
Operational problems	86

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up when outside temperatures are particularly low.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 90 or for Climatronic » page 92.

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to de-mist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak.

Note

- The exhaust air streams out through vents at the rear of the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

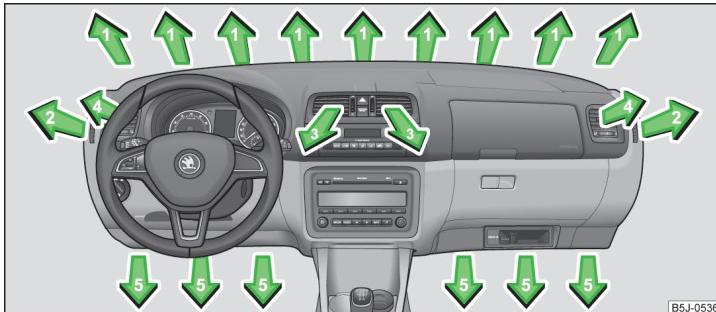


Fig. 94 Air outlet vents

Read and observe and on page 85 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 94 and the outlets can also be opened and closed individually.

Open the air outlet vents **3** and **4**

Turn the vertical wheel (air vents **3**) » Fig. 94 or the horizontal wheel (air outlet nozzles **4**) to the position.

Close air outlet vents **3** and **4**

Turn the vertical wheel (air vents **3**) » Fig. 94 or the horizontal wheel (air outlet nozzles **4**) to the **0** position.

Change air flow of air outlet vents **3** and **4**

- In order to change the strength of the air flow, swivel the horizontal lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster » Fig. 94.
- In order to change the lateral direction of the air flow, swivel the vertical lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.

Set the air supply to the individual vents with the air distribution control

C » Fig. 95 on page 87.

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Using the air conditioning system economically

Read and observe and on page 85 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It is recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 110.

Operational problems

Read and observe and on page 85 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be:

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 167.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 27.

If you are not able to resolve the fault yourself, or if the cooling output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and obtain assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	87
Setting	88
Recirculated air mode	88

Operation

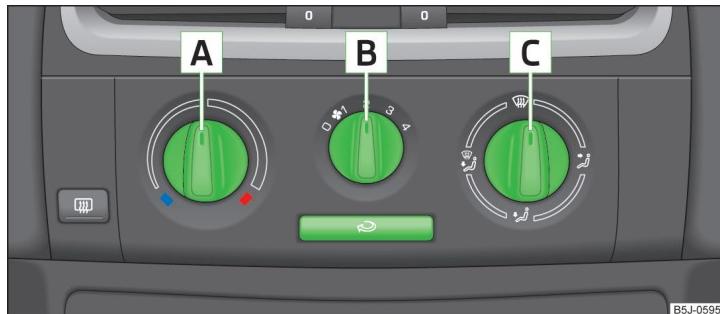


Fig. 95 Heating: Control elements

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 95:

- [A] Set the temperature (turn to the left: to reduce the temperature, turn to the right: to increase the temperature)
- [B] Set the blower level (level 0: blower off, level 4: the highest blower speed)
- [C] Set the direction of the air outlet » page 86
- ⟳ Switch recirculation on/off » page 88

Controls [A] and [C] » Fig. 95 can be set to any intermediate position.

! WARNING

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Setting

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls.

Setting	Control dial settings » Fig. 95 on page 87			Symbol key ↪ » Fig. 95 on page 87	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 94 on page 86
	A	B	C		
Defrosting the windshield and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windshield and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	 	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the stop to the right	3		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	 	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the stop to the left	Desired position		Do not switch on	Opening

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 94 on page 86 in the open position in all operating modes.

Note

If the air distribution is directed only towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can limit the heating comfort.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

► Press the ↪ button.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

► Press the ↪ button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 95 on page 87 is turned to the  position. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by pressing the ↪ button again.

WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period, as "stale air" can cause fatigue in the driver and the passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation _____ 89

Setting the air conditioning system _____ 90

Recirculated air mode _____ 90▶

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on [» page 89](#).
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

! CAUTION

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

i Note

- We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- During operation of the air conditioning, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed may occur in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Operation

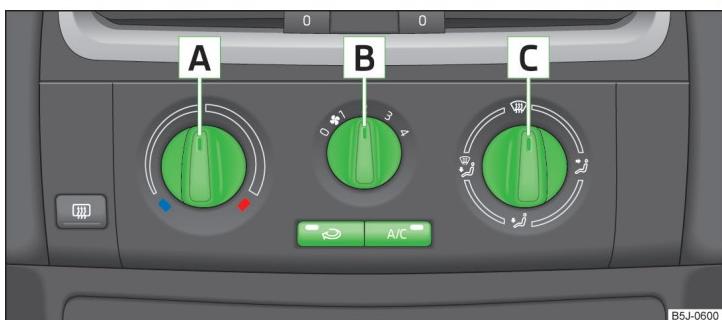


Fig. 96 The air conditioning system: Control elements

Read and observe **!** on [page 89](#) first.

Functions of the individual controls » [Fig. 96](#):

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left: to reduce the temperature, turn to the right: to increase the temperature)
- B** Set the blower level (level 0: blower off, level 4: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet [» page 86](#)
- Switch recirculation on/off [» page 90](#)
- A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off

i Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met [» page 88](#). The operational readiness of the cooling system is indicated by the indicator light in the button lighting up.

Setting the air conditioning system

Read and observe  on page 89 first.

Recommended basic settings of the air conditioning controls.

Setting	Control dial settings » Fig. 96 on page 89			Button » Fig. 96 on page 89		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 94 on page 86
	A	B	C			
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows ^{a)}	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Do not switch on	Automatically switched on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the stop to the right	3		Briefly switch on	Switched off	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Briefly switch on ^{b)}	Activated	Opening
Optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Do not switch on	Activated	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the stop to the left	Desired position		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening

^{a)} We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

^{b)} Under certain conditions, recirculated air mode » page 90 may come on automatically; the warning light will then light up in the  button.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 94 on page 86 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe  on page 89 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

Press the  button.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

Press the  button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control  » Fig. 96 on page 89 is turned to the  position.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by pressing the  button again.

WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period, as "stale air" can cause fatigue in the driver and the passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	91
Automatic mode	92
Setting the temperature	92
Recirculated air mode	92
Controlling the blower	92
Defrosting windscreens	93

Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » [page 91](#).
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

- We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- During operation of the Climatronic, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed can occur in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Control elements

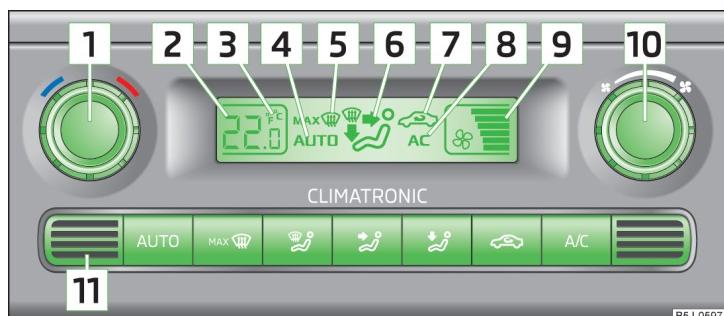


Fig. 97 Climatronic: Control elements

The buttons/control dial

- 1 Setting the interior temperature » [page 92](#)

Display

- 2 Display of selected interior temperature

- 3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, change the displayed temperature units » [page 92](#)

- 4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system

- 5 Ventilation or defrosting of the windscreens activated

- 6 Direction of air flow

- 7 Recirculated air mode activated

- 8 Cooling system activated

- 9 Blower speed set

The buttons/control dial

- 10 Adjust the blower speed » [page 92](#)

- 11 Interior temperature sensor

- AUTO Automatic mode » [page 92](#)

- MAX De-mist or de-ice the windscreens » [page 93](#)

- Windscreen air flow to the windows

- Windscreen air flow to the upper body

- Windscreen air flow in the footwell

 Switch recirculation on/off » [page 92](#)

 Switch the cooling system on/off

Note

Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor  » [Fig. 97](#); it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic system.

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching on

- › Set a temperature between +18 °C and +29 °C.
- › Move the air outlet vents **3** » [Fig. 94](#) on page 86 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
- › Press the **AUTO** button » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91; **AUTO** will appear in the display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing any of the air distribution buttons or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

Setting the temperature

Setting temperature

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Turn the control dial  » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91 to the left or to the right to increase or decrease the temperature.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit

- › Press and hold the **AUTO** and **A/C** buttons simultaneously.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature unit (no. **3** » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91).

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you set the temperature below +18 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you set a temperature higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display.

In both end positions, the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity. No automatic temperature control takes place during this.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

- › Press the  button » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91.

The display shows the  icon.

Switching off

- › Press the  button » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91 again.

The  icon in the display goes out.

WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period, as "stale air" can cause fatigue in the driver and the passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol  will begin to flash in the display as a sign that the recirculated air mode is switched on long-term. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Controlling the blower

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

- › Turn control dial  » [Fig. 97](#) on page 91 to the left or to the right to increase or decrease the blower speed.

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The blower speed set is indicated by displaying the corresponding number of segments in icon 9 » Fig. 97 on page 91 in the display.

! WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

Switching on

- › Press the MAX ϖ button » Fig. 97 on page 91.

Switching off

- › Press the MAX ϖ button » Fig. 97 on page 91 again or press the AUTO button.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents 1 and 2 » Fig. 94 on page 86. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Communication and multimedia

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems	93
Introductory information	94
Phone Phonebook	94
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel	95
Inserting the mobile phone and adapter	95
Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter	96
Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system	96
Symbols in the MAXI DOT display	97
Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display	97

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The possible reasons for this are:

- › no external aerial.
- › external aerial incorrectly installed.
- › transmission power greater than 10 watts.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the device in a way that you are in full control of your vehicle in every traffic situation - there is the risk of accidents!

! WARNING (Continued)

- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.
- The Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist workshop before the vehicle is transported by air.

i Note

- We recommend that mobile phones and two-way radio systems be installed in the a vehicle by a specialist workshop.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II. You can ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the GSM II universal telephone fitting.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Introductory information

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the adapter, radio or the navigation system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.

- Phone Phonebook » [page 94](#).
- Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » [page 95](#).

➤ Managing telephone calls via the adapter » [page 96](#).

➤ Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » [page 97](#).

➤ Voice control of the telephone » [page 98](#).

➤ Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » [page 99](#).

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology. The adapter serves only for charging the telephone and for transmitting the signal to the vehicle's external aerial.

i Note

The following guidelines must be observed » [page 93](#), *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Phone Phonebook

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

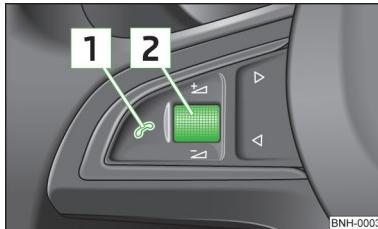


Fig. 98
Multifunction steering wheel:
Mobile phone operation

There are buttons in the steering wheel for easy operation of the basic functions of the phone » Fig. 98 so that the driver is distracted from the traffic as little as possible when using the phone.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation (hands-free system) at the factory.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons and the symbols \leftarrow and \rightarrow on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 98	Action	Operation
[1]	Press briefly	Accept call, terminate call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of selected numbers
[1]	Press button for a long period of time	Reject call, last number dialled ^{a)} , switch voice control on/off ^{b)}
[2]	Press briefly	Switch on/off voice control
[2]	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
[2]	Turn downwards	Decrease volume

a) Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

b) Valid for vehicles without the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

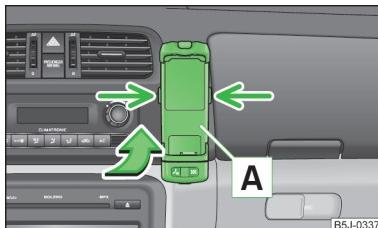


Fig. 99
Universal telephone preinstalla-
tion

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the mobile phone can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Fitting

- First push adapter [A] in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 99 into the mount as far as the stop. Then press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.
- Insert the mobile phone into the adapter [A] (as specified in the instructions from the manufacturer of the adapter).

Removing

- Press the side locks on the mount » Fig. 99 at the same time and remove the adapter with the mobile phone.

! CAUTION

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When removing the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, which reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. The charging of the mobile phone battery is also interrupted.

Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter



Fig. 100 Principle sketch: Adapter with one button/adapter with two buttons

Function overview of the » Fig. 100 (PTT - "push to talk") button on the adapter.

- » Switch on/off voice control.
- » Accept/end a call.

Some adapters include the button **A** » Fig. 100 in addition to the button. After pressing this button for 2 seconds, the number 112 (Emergency call) is dialled.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

¹⁾ Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN is either displayed or the PIN 1234 has to be entered manually.

²⁾ Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

- » Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- » Switch on the ignition.
- » Select the **Phone - New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the control unit has completed the search.
- » Select your mobile phone from the menu of the units found.
- » Confirm the PIN¹⁾.
- » If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN¹⁾ within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established²⁾.
- » To finish pairing, confirm the creation of the new user profile in the MAXI DOT display.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.

- » By turning the ignition off and on.
- » By turning voice control off and on.
- » In the **Bluetooth - Visibility** menu in the MAXI DOT display.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone

After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone¹⁾. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

- By withdrawing the ignition key.
- By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
- By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth - Users** menu item in the MAXI DOT display.

Solving connection problems

Check the operating status of the mobile phone if the system reports **No paired phone found**.

- Is the mobile phone switched on?
- Is the PIN code entered?
- Is Bluetooth® active?
- Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
- Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Note

- If a suitable adapter is available for your mobile phone, only use your mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount so that the radiation in the vehicle drops to a minimum.
- Placing the mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount ensures optimum sending and receiving power.

Symbols in the MAXI DOT display

Symbol	Meaning
	Charge status of the telephone battery ^{a)}
	Signal strength ^{a)}
	a phone is connected to the hands-free system.

¹⁾ Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

²⁾ On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the **» Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system**.

³⁾ This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Symbol	Meaning
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices.
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system.

^{a)} This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.

- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**²⁾
- **Call lists**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**²⁾
- **Settings**³⁾
- **Back**

Phone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, *, #** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call lists

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call lists** menu item.

- **Missed calls**
- **Dialled numbers**
- **Received calls**

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox²⁾ and then dial the number.

Bluetooth

- The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored users
 - **New user** - Search for new mobile phones in reception range
 - **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the phone for other devices
 - **Media Player**
 - **Active device**
 - **Paired devices**
 - **Search**
 - **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

- The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.

- **Phone book**
 - **Update¹⁾**
 - **List**
 - **Surname**
 - **First name**
- **Ring tone**

Back

Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue	98
Voice commands	99

Dialogue

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.

- Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
- Avoid a bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
- It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
- Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number

The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, *, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Switching on voice control

- Press the button on the adapter » Fig. 100 on page 96 briefly.
- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly » page 95, *Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel*.

Switching off voice control

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played will have to be stopped as follows:

- Press the button on the adapter briefly.
- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.

- with the **CANCEL** voice command.
- Press the button on the adapter.
- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly.

¹⁾ On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

Note

- The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control or a phone mount and adapter.

Voice commands

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL REGISTER	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC ^{a)}	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

^{a)} On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *Operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "Sorry?", and a new attempt can be made. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd. failed attempt, the answer "Cancelled" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book - Voice tag - Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth®	99
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel	100
AUX and MDI inputs	101

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

To ensure the music can be played back via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone - Bluetooth - Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » [page 99](#), *Voice commands*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

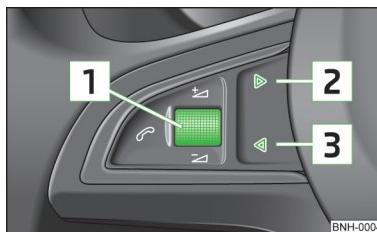


Fig. 101
Multifunction steering wheel:
Control buttons and wheel

BNH-0004

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

The multifunction steering wheel has buttons for operating the basic functions of factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 101.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 101	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD/MP3/Navigation
[1]	Press briefly	Switch off/on tone	
[1]	Press button for a long period of time	Switch the unit on/off	
[1]	Turn upwards	Increase the volume	
[1]	Turn downwards	Decrease volume	
[2]	Press briefly	Change to the next preset radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the next title
[2]	Press button for a long period of time	Search forwards	Fast forward
[3]	Press briefly	Change to the previous preset radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the previous title
[3]	Press button for a long period of time	Search backwards	Fast rewind

Note

- The functions of button **[1]** are different for vehicles fitted with a universal telephone preinstallation GSM II » [page 95](#).
- The loudspeakers in the vehicle are adjusted to the power output of the radio and navigation system of 4x20°W.

AUX and MDI inputs

The AUX input is located below the front armrest and is marked with **AUX**.

The MDI input (AUX and USB) is located at the front under the storage compartment on the passenger side.

The AUX- and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or MP3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

For a description of use, refer to the relevant operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer	102
Ignition lock	103
Starting the engine	103
Switching off the engine	103

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

! WARNING

- When the vehicle is travelling with the engine off, the ignition key must always be in position **[2]** » Fig. 102 on page 103 (ignition switched on). This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel - there is the risk of an accident.
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise the steering wheel could lock - there is the risk of an accident.
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is an accident, damage or theft risk!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a halt - there is the risk of an accident.

! WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The engine's exhaust gases also contain the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide, a poisonous gas - risk of death.
- Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

! CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running **[3]** » Fig. 102 on page 103.
- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, the fuse for the fuel pump may have a fault. Check the fuse and replace, if necessary » page 167 or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts otherwise the starter could be damaged.
- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 163, *Jump-starting*.

! CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and high engine loads until the engine has yet reached its operating temperature - there is a risk of damaging the engine.
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

! For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

! Note

The radiator fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The MAXI DOT display shows the following:

Immobilizer active.

Ignition lock

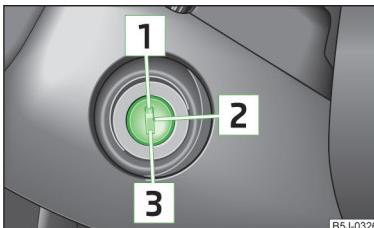


Fig. 102
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe and on page 102 first.

Petrol engines » Fig. 102

- Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
- Ignition switched on
- Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 102

- Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
- Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
- Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot be turned or can only be turned with difficulty to position **2** » Fig. 102, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Starting the engine

Read and observe and on page 102 first.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light lights up after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine once the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position P or N.
- Switch on the ignition **2** » Fig. 102 on page 103.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Turn the key to position **3** to the stop and release immediately the engine has started – do not depress the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **2**.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **1**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe and on page 102 first.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key to position **1** » Fig. 102 on page 103.

Brakes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking	104
Handbrake	105

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – there is the risk of an accident.
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. If you fail to do so, the functionality of the brake servo can be impaired – there is the risk of an accident.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – there is a risk of an accident.
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle might then move off – there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » [page 110](#).
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

 Read and observe  and  on [page 104](#) first.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance down a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between services.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know how great the damage is.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 36](#),  **Brake system**.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

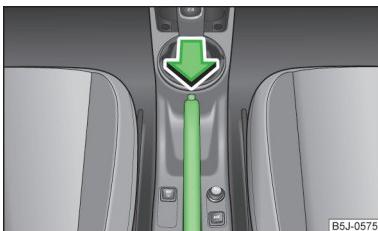


Fig. 103
Handbrake

B5J-0575

Read and observe and on page 104 first.

Apply

▶ Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Releasing

▶ Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and at the same time push in the locking button » Fig. 103.

▶ Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system - there is a risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

After the vehicle has come to a standstill, always engage the handbrake firmly and then engage the first gear (vehicles with manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to the P position (vehicles with automatic transmission).

Manual gear shifting and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing	105
Pedals	105

Manual gear changing

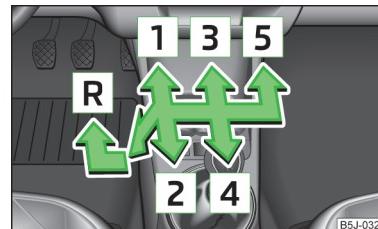


Fig. 104
Shift pattern of the 5-speed manual gearbox

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 28.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving - there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – there is a risk of obstructing or restriction pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever	106
Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)	107
Starting-off and driving	108
Malfunction	108
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	109

! WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if the forward driving mode is changed when the vehicle is halted and the engine is running – there is a risk of an accident.
- Never shift the selector lever to R or P modes when driving – there is a risk of an accident.
- The vehicle must be held on the brake pedal in D, S or R modes if the vehicle is halted and the engine is running. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.

! CAUTION

■ If the selector lever is shifted to N while the vehicle is being driven you must lift off the accelerator pedal and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before shifting the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.

■ At temperatures below -10 °C, the engine can only be started in selector lever position P.

■ Never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal when stopping on a hill – this may lead to transmission damage.

i Note

The ignition key can only be withdrawn once the ignition has been switched off if the selector lever is in the P position ¹⁾.

Modes and use of selector lever

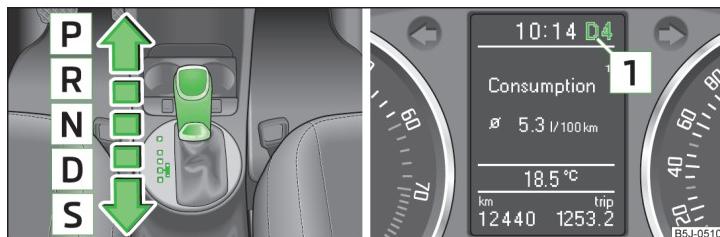


Fig. 105 Selector lever /MAXI DOT display: Selector lever positions

□ Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the gear currently selected are indicated in the display **1** » Fig. 105.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 105.

P – Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Depress the brake pedal and simultaneously press the shiftlock in the selector lever grip before shifting to **R** from **P** or **N**.

N - Neutral

Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)

In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

The shiftlock on the selector lever grip must be pressed when moving the selector lever out of **D** mode into **S** mode.

Releasing selector lever from **P** or **N** modes (selector lever lock)

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The  warning light lights up in the instrument cluster » page 42.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the locking button in the selection lever grip.

The selector lever is not locked when shifted quickly through **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approximately 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

i Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)

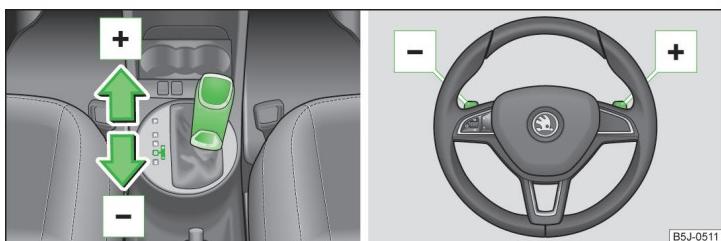


Fig. 106 Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 106 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while halted and while driving.

The gear currently selected is indicated in the display  » Fig. 105 on page 106.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 28.

Switching to manual shifting

Push the gear selector from position **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears

Press the selector lever forwards  » Fig. 106.
Pull the right-hand paddle  » Fig. 106 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

Press the selector lever backwards  » Fig. 106.
Pull the left-hand paddle  » Fig. 106 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual gear shifting in mode **D** or **S**

Pull one of the  paddles » Fig. 106 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Manual gear shifting is deactivated if more than 1 minute passes after either of the  paddles was pulled. The temporary switch to manual gear shifting can also be deactivated by pulling the right-hand  paddle towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

i Note

It may be advantageous to use manual gear shifting when driving downhill, for example. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence brake wear » [page 104, Information for braking](#).

Starting-off and driving

 **Read and observe**  and  **on page 106 first.**

Starting off

- › Start the engine.
- › Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- › Press and hold the shiftlock button on the selector lever grip.
- › Move the selector lever into the desired position » [page 106](#) and then release the lock button.
- › Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

- › Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- › Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking

- › Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- › Firmly apply the handbrake.
- › Press and hold the shiftlock button on the selector lever grip.
- › Move the selector lever to the **P** position and then release the shiftlock button.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve maximum acceleration by your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

! **WARNING**

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – there is a risk of an accident.

Malfunction

 **Read and observe**  and  **on page 106 first.**

Emergency programme

The transmission switches to the emergency programme if there is a fault in the automatic gearbox system.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following:

- › Only certain gears are selected.
- › Reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- › Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating

The gearbox may, for example, become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » [page 34, !\[\]\(4ff5efae5935faabfbcaa9fd7681bfd7_img.jpg\) Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot.](#)

i Note

Visit a specialist workshop if the gearbox has switched to the emergency programme.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

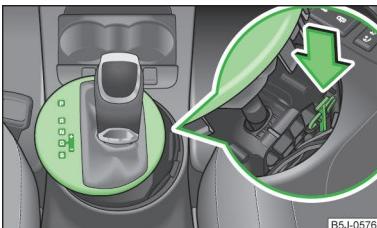


Fig. 107
Selector lever-emergency un-locking

B5J-0576

Read and observe 1 and 2 on page 106 first.

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be driven.

The selector lever emergency unlocking procedure is as follows.

- › Firmly apply the handbrake.
- › Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.
- › Pull up rear cover.
- › Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 107.
- › At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to **N**.

The selector lever will be locked once more if it is moved again to **P**.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine	109
New tyres	110
New brake pads	110

New engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- › Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- › No full throttle.
- › Avoid high engine speeds.
- › Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale on the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running-in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » page 28, Recommended gear. Very high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » !.

In vehicles with manual transmission, do not drive at unnecessarily low engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 28, Recommended gear.

! CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm and hence engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

New tyres

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

New brake pads initially do not provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and respect the environment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving with anticipation	110
Economical gear changing	110
Avoiding full throttle	111
Reducing idling	111
Avoiding short distances	111
Checking tyre pressure	111
Avoiding unnecessary ballast	112
Regular maintenance	112
Saving electrical energy	112
Environmental compatibility	112

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors.

- Your personal driving style
- Operating conditions
- Technical requirements

The fuel economy can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be maintained when accelerating, to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

! CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Driving with anticipation

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing.

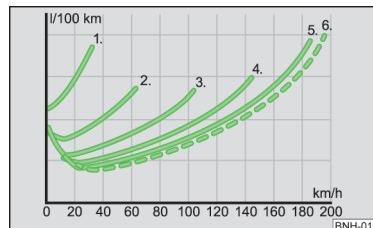


Fig. 108
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Shift up into the next gear at approximately 2000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » [page 28, Recommended gear](#).

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » [Fig. 108](#).

Automatic gearbox

- Depress the accelerator pedal **slowly**. However, do not depress it as far as the kickdown position » [page 108](#).
- An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

Avoiding full throttle

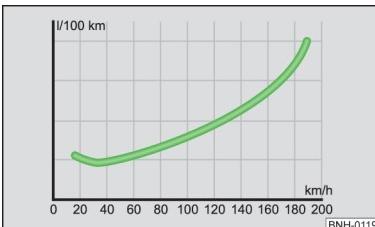


Fig. 109
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

☞ Read and observe on page 110 first.

The slower you drive, the more the fuel savings.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The graph » [Fig. 109](#) shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

☞ Read and observe on page 110 first.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started. In this case high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

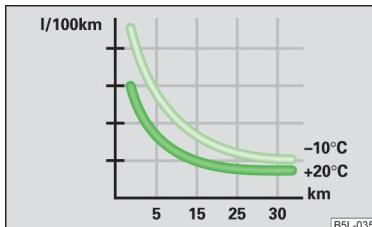


Fig. 110
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

☞ Read and observe on page 110 first.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The graph » [Fig. 110](#) shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

Checking tyre pressure

☞ Read and observe on page 110 first.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

 **Read and observe**  **on page 110 first.**

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend that you carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

 **Read and observe**  **on page 110 first.**

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for driving economically. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle is serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Saving electrical energy

 **Read and observe**  **on page 110 first.**

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

 **Read and observe**  **on page 110 first.**

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials, and manufacture of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO₂.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.

- › No asbestos.
- › Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture

- › Solvent-free cavity protection.
- › Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- › The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- › No CFCs used in the production process.
- › Without use of mercury.
- › Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always ¹⁾ be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

Detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of end-of-life cars is available from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information	113
Driving through water on streets	113

General information

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

- › When driving on poorly maintained roads and tracks.
- › When driving over kerb stones.
- › When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is necessary for vehicle with a sports suspension and when then vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

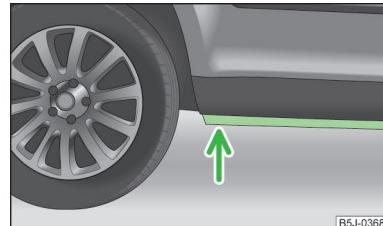


Fig. 111
Driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

- › Determine the depth of the water before driving through it.
The water level must not reach above the web of the lower sill » Fig. 111.
- › Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.
At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.
- › Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off. ▶

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

! WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – there is the risk of an accident.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

! CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

i Note

We recommend that the vehicle is checked by a specialist garage after it has been driven through water.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol	114
Headlights	114

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA service partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » [page 137](#), *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, the headlights must be adjusted by a specialist garage.

i Note

For more information on adjusting the headlights, consult a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stabilisation control (ESC) _____	115
Antilock Braking System (ABS) _____	116
Traction Control System (ASR) _____	116
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS) _____	116

! WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then be without function – there is the risk of an accident.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – there is the risk of an accident.
- Visit a specialist garage immediately in the event of an ABS fault. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS as you will not know how great the damage is and the limitation it is placing on the braking efficiency.

! CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » [page 127, Services, modifications and technical alterations](#).
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, TCS and EDL will also fail to work. An ABS fault is indicated with by the  warning light » [page 38](#).

Stabilisation control (ESC)

  Read and observe  and  on page 115 first.

The ESC system helps to maintain control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the road surface conditions, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **electronic stabilisation control (ESC)**:

- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Traction control (TCS),
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS);
- Hydraulic brake assist (HBA);
- Hill hold control (HHC).

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The  » [Fig. 112 on page 116](#) button can only be used to deactivate the TCS. The  warning light comes on in the instrument cluster when the TCS is deactivated.

In the event of an ESC fault, the ESC warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster  » [page 38](#).

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very rapid depression of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

ABS is activated sooner and more effectively with the intervention of HBA.

Hill hold control (HHC)

HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake when pulling away on a gradient.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

HHC is active on slopes of >5 % when the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes pulling away forwards or in reverse. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

 Read and observe  and  on page 115 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not pump the brakes or lift off the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (ASR)



Fig. 112
TCS button

 Read and observe  and  on page 115 first.

If the wheels are slipping, the ASR system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The ASR function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. Only in certain exceptional circumstances can it be sensible to switch the system off, for instance:

- › when driving with snow chains;
- › when driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface;
- › when it is necessary to "rock a vehicle free" when it has got stuck.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

You can switch TCS off and on again as needed by pressing the  button [» Fig. 112](#). The  warning light comes on in the instrument cluster when the TCS is deactivated.

The TCS warning light  [» page 41](#) lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

 Read and observe  and  on page 115 first.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

XDL function (Fabia RS and Fabia Estate RS only)

XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the relief of the inner front wheel during fast cornering. The active brake intervention on the brake of the inner wheel prevents it from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle continues to follow the desired track.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 117

Activation/deactivation 117

! WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

! CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the parking aid to operate properly.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.) system function may be limited.
- Additionally fitted modules, such as a bicycle rack, can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

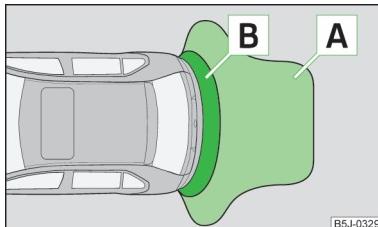


Fig. 113
Parking aid: Range of sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 117 first.

The parking aid (referred to below solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver via audible signals, via the display on the radio or via the factory-installed navigation system when parking and manoeuvring » *Radio user guide*, *Navigation system user guide*.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Range of sensors

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area A » Fig. 113). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area B) - danger area. **You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!**

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the border of the danger area starts (continuous tone) 5 cm further away from the vehicle. The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 117 first.

The system is activated automatically by engaging **reverse gear**. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by disengaging reverse gear.

Note

The system cannot be activated on vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device when towing a trailer.

Cruise control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing a speed	118
Changing a stored speed	118
Switching off temporarily	119
Switching off completely	119

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed above 25 km/h, once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The  warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the cruise control system is switched on.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – there is a risk of an accident.
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being enabled unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. Therefore, shift to a lower gear in good time or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox if first gear or reverse gear is engaged.

- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position P, N or R.
- The cruise control system may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.

Storing a speed

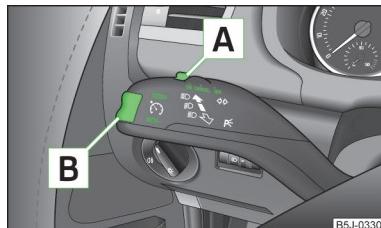


Fig. 114
Stalk: Use cruise control

 Read and observe  and  on page 118 first.

Storing a speed

- Press switch **A** » Fig. 114 to the ON position.
- After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button **B** into the SET position.

After you have released the rocker button **B** out of the position SET, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing a stored speed

 Read and observe  and  on page 118 first.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

- Depress the accelerator to increase the speed.
- Release the accelerator to reduce the speed back down to the preset speed.

However, if the saved speed is exceeded by more than 10 km/h for a period of more than 5 minutes by depressing the accelerator, the stored speed is deleted from the memory. The speed must then be saved again.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button **B**

- Press rocker button **B** » Fig. 114 on page 118 to the RES position.

► The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed

- The stored speed can be **reduced** by pressing rocker button **B** » Fig. 114 on page 118 to the **SET** position.
- The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
- If the rocker button is released at a speed below around 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing rocker button **B** to the **SET** position after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than around 25 km/h.

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system.

Switching off temporarily

Read and observe and on page 118 first.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily switched off** by pushing switch **A** » Fig. 114 on page 118 to the spring-loaded **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push rocker button **B** to the **RES** position to **resume** the set speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

Switching off completely

Read and observe and on page 118 first.

► Press switch **A** » Fig. 114 on page 118 to the right to the **OFF** position.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions for the system	119
Operation	120

System conditioned automatic start-up	120
Manually deactivating/activating	120
Information messages	120

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to just as the system) reduces fuel consumption and polluting emissions and CO₂ emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions for the system



Fig. 115
Maxi DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe on page 119 first.

For the system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to operate, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function cannot be either influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's view.

If after stopping the car, the message **UNABLE TO START STOP** appears in the segment display or in the MAXI DOT display the check mark  » Fig. 115, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential, for example, for the following reasons.

- › The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- › The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- › The current consumption is too high.
- › High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual indoor temperature).

Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- After manual engine start, the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation

 Read and observe  on page 119 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shut down

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Shift the gear lever to Neutral.
- › Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown takes place, segment display shows **START STOP ACTIVE** or a check mark appears in the MAXI DOT display  » Fig. 115 on page 119.

Automatic engine start

- › Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

System conditioned automatic start-up

 Read and observe  on page 119 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. The possible reasons for this are, for example:

- › The vehicle has begun to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- › The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
- › The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating



Fig. 116
Button for the START-STOP system

 Read and observe  on page 119 first.

Deactivate/activate

- › Press the  button » Fig. 116.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note

If the system is automatically deactivated when the engine is turned off, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

 Read and observe  on page 119 first.

The messages and information are shown in the instrument cluster display.

- **Start the engine manually.**
- **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

M Error: Start-stop system
S ERROR START-STOP

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	122
Adjusting the ready position	122
Fitting the ball head	123
Check proper fitting	123
Removing the ball head	124
Use and care	124

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with towing equipment or is fitted with towing equipment from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

! WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- Do not use the ball head if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Never release the ball head while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

Take care with the ball head to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

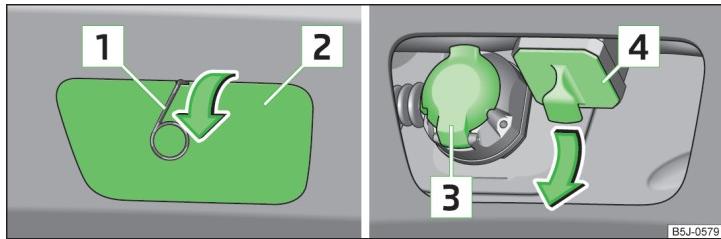
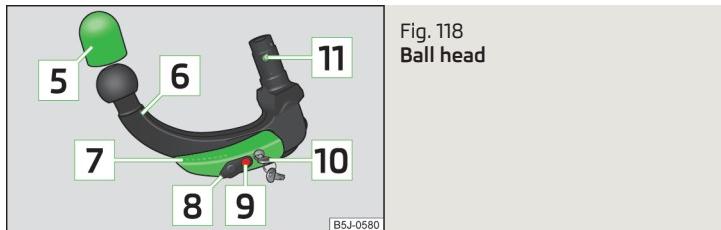


Fig. 117 Remove cover cap: on the rear bumper / for the receiving shaft



Read and observe and on page 121 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment » page 158, *Vehicle tool kit*.

Image description » Fig. 117 and » Fig. 118

- 1 Tool for removing the wheel trims
- 2 Cover in the rear bumper
- 3 13-pin power socket
- 4 Cover for the mounting recess
- 5 Dust cap
- 6 Ball head
- 7 Operating lever
- 8 Lock cap

- 9 Release pin
- 10 Key
- 11 Locking ball

Note

- The tool for removing the wheel trim is part of the vehicle tool kit » [page 158](#).
- If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

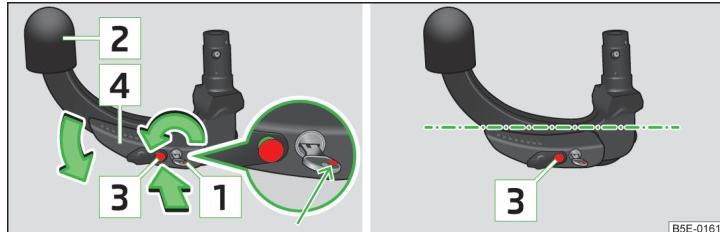


Fig. 119 Setting the ready position/ready position

Read and observe and on page 121 first.

Always adjust the ball head in the ready position before fitting.

- Turn the key so that its red mark 1 » [Fig. 119](#) is visible.
- Grip the ball head below the protective cap 2.
- Press the release pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The lever remains locked in this position.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Fitting the ball head

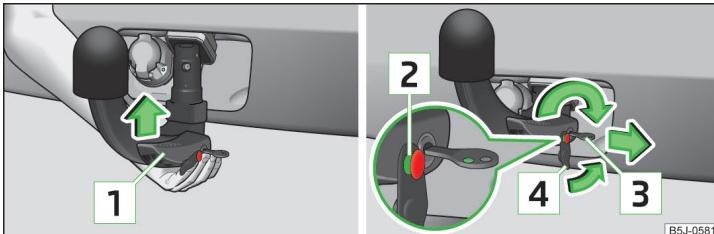


Fig. 120 Insert the ball head/lock the lock, and put the lock cover on

Read and observe and on page 121 first.

- Remove the cover in the rear bumper [Fig. 117 on page 122](#) in the direction of the arrow using the tool for removing the wheel trims.
- Pull off the cover for the mounting recess [Fig. 117 on page 122](#) in the direction of the arrow .
- Adjust the ball head to the ready position [page 122](#).
- Grip the tow bar from underneath [Fig. 120](#) and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place .

Lever [Fig. 120](#) automatically turns upwards and the release pin pops out (its red and green parts are visible) .

If the lever does not turn automatically, or if the release pin does not pop out, remove the ball head from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the ball head and the mounting recess.

- Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key by 180° to the right (see green marking is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
- Push cap [Fig. 120](#) onto the lock in the direction of the arrow .
- Check the ball head for secure mounting [page 123](#).

! WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head - there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

! CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever - there is a risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.
- After removing the ball head, always place the cap on the mounting recess.
- Remove the cover from the rear bumper with care - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper and the cap.

! Note

Store cover and cover [Fig. 117 on page 122](#) in a suitable place in the luggage compartment after removing them.

Check proper fitting

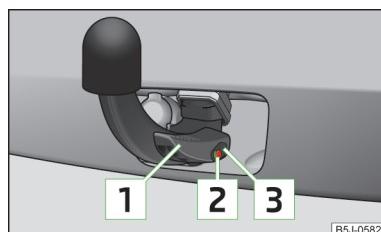


Fig. 121
Check that the ball head is fitted properly

Read and observe and on page 121 first.

Check that the ball head is fitted properly each time before use.

Check the following points.

- ✓ Lever is up as far as it goes [Fig. 121](#).
- ✓ The release pin is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).

- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap **[3]** is on the lock of the operating lever.
- ✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

! WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head was properly locked.

Removing the ball head

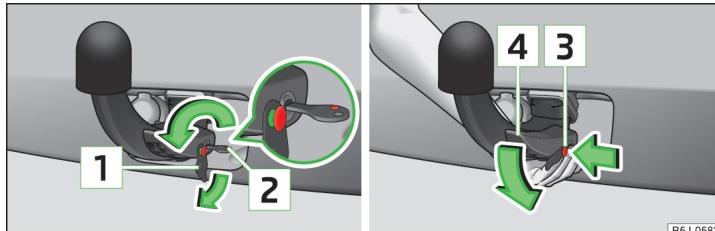


Fig. 122 Unlock the operating lever of the ball head/removing the ball head

! Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 121 first.

- Remove the cap **[1]** » Fig. 122 from the lock on the tow bar in the direction of the arrow.
- Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 180° to the left so that the red marking **[2]** becomes visible.
- Grasp the ball head from underneath.
- Press the release pin **[3]** as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever **[4]** downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » **!**.

- Fit the cover for the mounting recess **[4]** » Fig. 117 on page 122 in the opposite direction to the arrow.

- Offer up the cap to the rear bumper **[2]** » Fig. 117 on page 122 aligning it with "check mark" in the lower bumper area.
- Push the cap in first on the left and right and then at the top.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage in a sudden braking manoeuvre and put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards - there is a risk of damaging the key.
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

i Note

- We recommend that you put the protective cap on the ball before removing the ball head.
- Clean any dirt from the ball head before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

! Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 121 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease where necessary.

Fit the protective cap when stowing away the ball head to protect the luggage compartment against dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer	125
Towing a trailer	125
Anti-theft alarm system	126

! WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

Read and observe **!** on page 125 first.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" [» page 152](#), *Tyre service life*.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances [» page 175](#), *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1 000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing equipment are merely test data for the towing equipment. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – there is the risk of an accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly affect the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – there is the risk of an accident and serious injury.

Towing a trailer

Read and observe **!** on page 125 first.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. National legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle can be lifted when a trailer is being towed and the headlights can dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlight setting on the headlight range control [» page 57](#), *Headlight beam adjustment*.

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

The speed must be reduced immediately if the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  in the instrument cluster starts to flash. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » [page 145](#), *Checking the coolant level*.

The following guidelines must be observed » [page 37](#),   Coolant.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

! WARNING

- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

i Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » [page 167](#).
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your car inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Anti-theft alarm system

 Read and observe  on [page 125](#) first.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 49](#).

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing equipment.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

i Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Car care

Services, modifications and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA Original Parts	127
ŠKODA Original Accessories	128
Spoiler	128
Airbags	128

The instructions and guidelines issued by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when making any modifications, repairs or technical changes to your vehicle.

Compliance with these guidelines and instructions is in the interest of the roadworthiness and technical condition of your vehicle. The vehicle will comply with road traffic regulations following the modifications, repairs and technical changes.

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

! WARNING

- Work not properly performed on your vehicle can lead to faults - there is a risk of an accident resulting in serious injury.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and parts may suffer increased wear.
- The ŠKODA Partner cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

! WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner who will also fit the purchased parts correctly.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

i Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the »Service schedule warranty.

ŠKODA Original Parts

Read and observe ! on page 127 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to ŠKODA AUTO a.s. specifications in respect of design, dimensional accuracy and material and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. can guarantee the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but with wear-and-tear parts for at least 15 years after the end of series production and with all other vehicle parts for at least 10 years.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these components for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original Accessories

 **Read and observe  on page 127 first.**

You should note the following if you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. offers a warranty on the reliability, safety and suitability for your particular vehicle of these accessories. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or offer a warranty on other products even though in some instances such products may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised approval authority.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice and professional fitting if requested by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in any other agreements. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these accessories for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner's website.

Spoiler

 **Read and observe  on page 127 first.**

The following instructions shall be observed if your new vehicle is equipped with a **spoiler** fitted to the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the tailgate.

- For safety reasons the vehicle must only ever be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the tailgate.
- A spoiler cannot be fitted alone on the front bumper nor in combination without a spoiler on the tailgate or in combination with an inappropriate spoiler on the tailgate.
- We recommend that you consult a ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs, replacement, fitting or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

Work not properly performed on the spoilers on your vehicle can result in faults - there is a risk of an accident and serious injury.

Airbags

 **Read and observe  on page 127 first.**

The system components for the airbag system may be found in the front bumper, doors, front seats, the roof lining or in the bodywork.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Adjustments, repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system - there is the risk of an accident and fatal injury.
- The airbag system must be replaced if an airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the airbag system.

- It is prohibited to tamper with individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never fit damaged airbag parts to a vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

! WARNING

- A change in the suspension of the vehicle including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations can alter the functioning of the airbag system - there is a risk of accident and fatal injury.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.

Washing the car

📘 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	129
Automatic car wash systems	130
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	130

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends, for example, on the following factors.

- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, under trees, etc.).
- Season of the year.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

! WARNING

- Washing your vehicle in the winter: water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency - there is the risk of an accident.
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off - there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - there is a risk of paint damage.

🌍 For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

📘 Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

Soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as much as you can off this off.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

! CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - there is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows including the sliding/tilting roof, etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular mounted parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack, two-way radio aerial – it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

The lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers must be cleaned and degreased with cleaning agents especially formulated for the task after an automatic wash with wax.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe and on page 129 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner – there is a risk of freezing.
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

▪ The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

▪ See also Washing a vehicle with decorative film trim using a high-pressure cleaner » page 132 .

Vehicle exterior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Caring for vehicle paintwork	131
Plastic parts	131
Rubber seals	131
Chrome parts	131
Decorative films	132
Windows and exterior mirrors	132
Headlight lenses	132
Door lock cylinders	132
Underbody waxing	133
Wheels	133
Underbody protection	133

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children – there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – there is a risk of cuts.

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, kitchen scrubbers or similar cleaning products - there is a risk of damaging the paintwork finish.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Caring for vehicle paintwork

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Treat minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or chips immediately, if possible, with **paint pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - there is a risk of scratching the paintwork.
- Do not apply polish to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any polish to body surfaces that come into contact with door seals and window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not clean plastic parts completely, use a specific plastic care product.

CAUTION

Do not use polish on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer against a freezing to painted body parts and against road noise.

Do not treat the door seals or window guides with any cleaning agent.

CAUTION

An additional treatment of the seals can attack their protective coating and road noise may be generated.

Chrome parts

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

! CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - there is a risk of scratching the finish.

Decorative films

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use aggressive cleaning products or chemical solvents, it could result in damage to the films.

The following instructions must be observed for the high-pressure washing the vehicle.

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep the jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

! CAUTION

No ice scrapers should be used in the winter months to remove ice and snow from the areas to which films have been applied. Do not remove frozen snow or ice using other objects - there is a risk of damage to the film.

Windows and exterior mirrors

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Clean the windows regularly with clean water, inside and out.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the chamois leather can smear the windows and reduce visibility.

! CAUTION

■ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.

■ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand, and salt must not be removed from the window glass and mirrors - risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.

■ Never remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water - there is a risk of cracking in glass.

■ When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.

■ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents - there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Clean the plastic headlight lenses with clean, warm water and soap.

! CAUTION

■ Never wipe the headlights dry.

■ Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, this may damage the protective lacquer and consequently cause the cracking on the headlight lenses.

■ Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights - there is a risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

! CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Underbody waxing

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - there is a risk of fire.

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake dust otherwise the rim material will be attacked.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

Damage to the **protective coating** cannot be excluded when the vehicle is driven.

We recommend that you have the protective coating under the body and on the chassis inspected - preferably before the beginning and at the end of the cold season.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. These substances could ignite when the engine reaches its operating temperature - there is a risk of fire.

Care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	134
Synthetic leather, fabrics and Alcantara [®]	135
Seat covers	135
Seat belts	135

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scents and air fresheners to the dashboard – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreens or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the headlining with a brush – risk of damage to the lining surface.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care products represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Natural leather

 Read and observe  and  on page 133 first.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases act as abrasives. This leads to severe abrasion and the premature embrittlement of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **at regular short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a cotton or woollen cloth lightly moistened with water and then dry with a clean dry cloth » .

Clean **more severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of water).

Use a cleaning agent specially developed for the purpose to **remove stains**.

Treat the leather with a suitable leather care product at suitable regular intervals.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point during cleaning and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams. The leather would then become brittle and cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Damage of this nature cannot later be recognized as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

During the life of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g. wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Synthetic leather, fabrics and Alcantara®

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

Synthetic leather

Clean the synthetic leather with a damp cloth.

If the synthetic leather does not come completely clean with this method, a mild soap solution or specific cleaning agent must be used.

Fabrics

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and special detergent to clean the headlining.

Remove pilling and residues on upholstery with a brush.

Remove stubborn hair with a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat upholstery from direct sunlight to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
- Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to prevent the fabrics from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the fabrics against direct sunlight by covering them.
- Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

Electrically heated seats

Do not wet clean the seat covers as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning agents particularly formulated for them.

Compressed areas created on the fabrics by everyday use can be removed by brushing against the nap with a lightly moistened brush.

Always treat all parts of the upholstery so that no visible boundaries are created. Then leave the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly vacuum dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - there is a risk of stretching the upholstery.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Seat belts

Read and observe and on page 133 first.

The belt must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with a mild, soapy solution.

Remove dirt with a soft brush.

Soiled belts may impair proper operation of the inertia reels.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage is found in the belt fabric, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the buckle, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	137
Unleaded petrol	137
Diesel fuel	138

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » [Fig. 123 on page 137 - B](#).

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this could be damaged and fuel could escape – there is a risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – there is a risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country in which it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the country concerned. Is this not the case, then you must check whether the manufacturer permits operation of the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

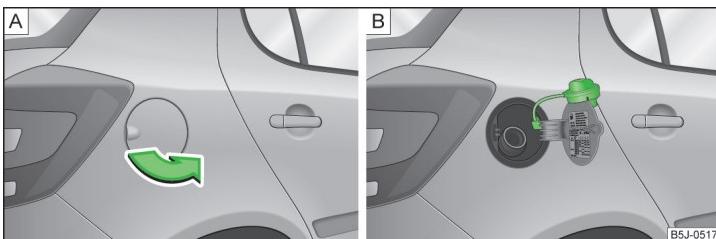


Fig. 123 Open tank lid / tank cap

Read and observe and on page 136 first.

Open fuel filler flap

- Open the fuel filler flap with one hand » Fig. 123 - A.
- Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and unlock it by moving it to the left with the vehicle key.
- Unscrew the filler cap by turning it anticlockwise and clip the cap on the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 123 - B.

Closing the filler cap

- Turn the filler cap to the right until it clicks into place.
- Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and lock it by turning the vehicle key to the right and remove the key.
- Close the filler cap.

CAUTION

- Before refuelling it is necessary to switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation).
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **45 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe and on page 136 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228¹⁾** standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol with a **maximum of 10% bioethanol (E10)**.

Specified fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON** can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95 RON** or higher.

In an emergency, if unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95 RON** is not available, you may refuel with petrol with an octane rating of **91, 92 or 93 RON** » .

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **98 RON** or higher. Unleaded petrol **95 RON** can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In an emergency, if unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **98 RON** or **95 RON** is not available, you may refuel with petrol with an octane rating of **91 or 92 or 93 RON** » .

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol complying with EN 228¹⁾ meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 98.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with leaded petrol that does not meet the standard once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system.
- Do not start the engine or switch on the engine if you have refuelled in error with a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies with the standards referred to above (e.g. leaded petrol). Engine parts could be significantly damaged. We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Petrol of an octane rating lower than **91 RON** must not be used, even in the event of an emergency, otherwise the engine could be severely damaged.

CAUTION

- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. **LRP**(lead replacement petrol) fuels with metallic constituents may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.
- Fuels with metallic constituents may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95 RON** in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93 RON** is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

 **Read and observe  and 

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590¹⁾** standard.**

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with a **maximum of 7% biodiesel (B7)²⁾**.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Diesel fuel additives

Additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel. This can cause serious damage to engine or exhaust system parts.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than diesel fuel complying with the standards referred to above (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition. Engine parts could be significantly damaged. We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

²⁾ In Germany complying with standard DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

! CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents), into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

Engine compartment

BOOK Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	140
Engine compartment overview	141
Radiator fan	141
Windscreen washer system	141

! WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scalding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the generally applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area.

! WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment - there is a risk of scalding. Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts - there is a risk of burns.
- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Consult a doctor immediately if coolant is swallowed.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. There is a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

! WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition unit - there is a risk of death.
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts - there is a risk of death. Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

! WARNING

- Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system.
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
 - Do not smoke.
 - Never work near open flames.
 - Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

! WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle against rolling away and support it with suitable axle stands: the car jack is not sufficient for this – there is a risk of injury.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – there is a risk of fire.
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. This is why after closing the bonnet, the lock must always be checked to ensure it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

i Note

- If there is anything you are not sure about concerning fluids, please consult a specialist garage.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

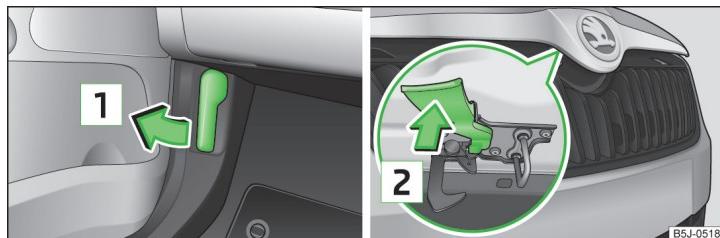


Fig. 124 Bonnet release lever/release lever

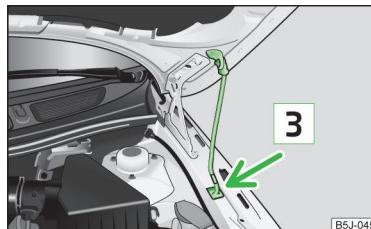


Fig. 125
Securing the bonnet

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

Opening

- Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 124.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

- Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
- Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
- Take the bonnet prop out of its bracket and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the prop in the opening 3 » Fig. 125 provided.

Closing

- Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet prop into the bracket provided.
- Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do not push it in.

! WARNING

Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 124.

Engine compartment overview

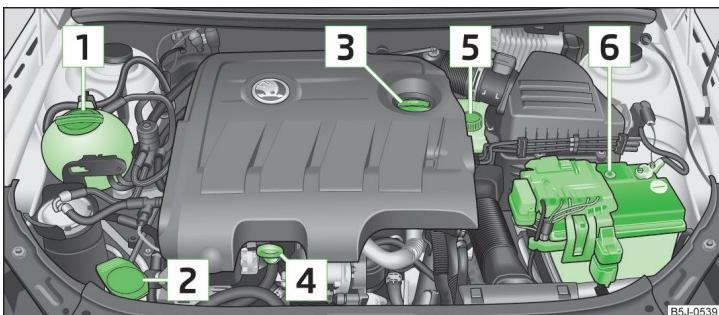


Fig. 126 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 126

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	145
2	Windscreens washer fluid reservoir	141
3	Engine oil filler opening	144
4	Engine oil dipstick	143
5	Brake fluid reservoir	146
6	Vehicle battery	146

¹⁾ In some countries, 5.4 ltr. applies for both variants.

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

! WARNING

The fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Windscreen washer system

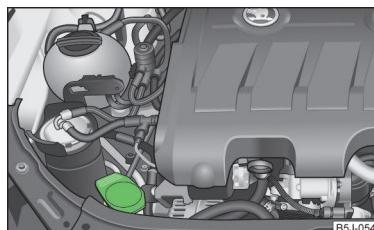


Fig. 127
Engine compartment: Wind-screens washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

The windscreens washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 127.

This contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreens or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system ¹⁾.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**in winter additionally with antifreeze**) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

The washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze in winter even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity	142
Checking the oil level	143
Replenishing	144
Changing	144

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

Engine oils are the subject of continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that you have the oil changed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings [» page 143](#).

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings [» page 139](#).
-  Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
-  Do not drive on if the oil level is above range [\[A\] » Fig. 128](#) on page 143. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil - there is a risk of serious engine damage.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- You must wash yourself thoroughly if your skin has come into contact with oil.

Specifications and capacity

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.2 litres/44 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	2.8
1.2 l/51 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	2.8
1.4 l/63 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.2
1.4 l/132 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.6
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.9
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.9

Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a DPF.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity
1.2 litres/44 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	2.8
1.2 l/51 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	2.8
1.4 l/63 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.2
1.6 l/77 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6
1.4 l/132 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.6
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.9
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.9

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without DPF

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

! CAUTION

Only the above-mentioned oils can be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals. We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, a maximum of 0.5 l of specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) engine oil can be used to refill once. Other engine oils must not be used - there is risk of engine damage.

Checking the oil level

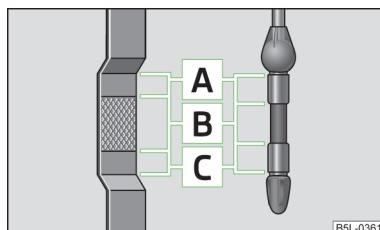


Fig. 128
Principle sketch: Dipstick

Read and observe and on page 142 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level » Fig. 128.

Checking the oil level

Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

› Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.

- › Open the bonnet.
- › Pull out the dipstick.
- › Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- › Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A

No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B

Oil can be refilled. The oil level may lie in range A.

Oil level within range C

The engine must be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches range B.

The engine burns some oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l / 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend it be checked after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range **A**, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 36, Engine oil. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- Always check the oil level on vehicles with the 1.2 l/44 kW engine when the engine is cold. Otherwise the measuring result is incorrect and oil could be incorrectly replenished - risk of engine damage!
- The oil level must never be above the **A** range » Fig. 128 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 142 first.

- Check the oil level » page 143.
- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 126 on page 141.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 142.
- Check the oil level » page 143.
- Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

Read and observe and on page 142 first.

The engine oil must be changed according to prescribed service intervals or according to the » Service plan service interval display.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity	145
Checking the coolant level	145
Replenishing	145

The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents the formation of scale.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40 %.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the amount of coolant additive can only be increased up to a maximum of 60 % (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze identified on the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 129 on page 145.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 139.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to fall below 40 %.
- Over 60 % coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 129 on page 145.
- We recommend that you visit a specialist garage if a fault causes the engine to overheat, otherwise serious engine damage may occur.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Capacity

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Coolant capacity (in litres)¹⁾

Petrol engines	Capacity
1.2 litres/44 kW	5.5
1.2 l/51 kW	5.5
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	7.7
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	7.7
1.4 l/63 kW	5.5
1.4 l/132 kW TSI	6.6
1.6 l/77 kW	5.5

Diesel engines	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	6.6
1.6 l/55 kW TDI CR DPF	8.4
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR DPF	8.4
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR DPF	8.4

Checking the coolant level

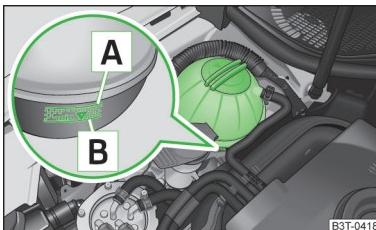


Fig. 129
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 129.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 129

A Mark for the **maximum** coolant level.

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible level of coolant.

The coolant level should be kept between the marks **A** and **B**.

If the coolant level is above the mark **A**, **no coolant may** be topped up.

If the coolant level is below the mark **B**, the coolant **must** be topped up.

Check the status

Switch off the engine.

Open the bonnet.

Check the level of coolant at the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 129.

Check the coolant level only when the engine is cold.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The stand can also be above the mark **A** » Fig. 129 .

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 37, Coolant. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Only top up with new coolant.

Switch off the engine.

Allow the engine to cool.

Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.

Replenish the coolant.

Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

¹⁾ The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Level check	146
Changing	146

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings [» page 139](#).
-  Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has fallen below the MIN marking [» Fig. 130 on page 146](#) - there is a risk of an accident. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Level check

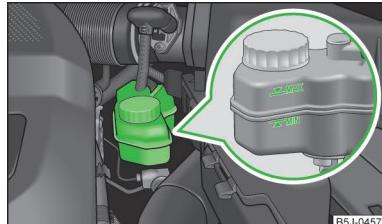


Fig. 130
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

! Read and observe ! and ! on page 146 first.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment [» Fig. 130](#).

➤ Switch off the engine.

➤ Open the bonnet.

➤ Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir [» Fig. 130](#).

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results in operation due to normal wear and tear and the automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light  [» page 36](#),  [Brake system](#) lighting up in the instrument cluster.

Changing

Introduction

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114;
- FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open cover	148
------------	-----

Checking the battery electrolyte level	148
--	-----

Charging	149
----------	-----

Replacing	149
-----------	-----

Disconnecting or reconnecting	149
Automatic load deactivation	150

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

! WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the generally applicable rules of safety as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety glasses or a face shield - there is a risk of being blinded.
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds on contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).

! WARNING (Continued)

- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the eyes immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately.
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. Seek immediate medical assistance if you swallow battery acid.

! WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light.
- Smoking or any activities which produce sparks are prohibited.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery - there is a risk of explosion.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery - there is a risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low - risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Bridging the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object, cable) creates a short circuit - there is a risk of melting the lead terminals, explosion, the battery burning, or acid being ejected.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

! CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage occurring. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery be undertaken by a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, followed by the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, followed by the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – there is a risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

i Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Open cover

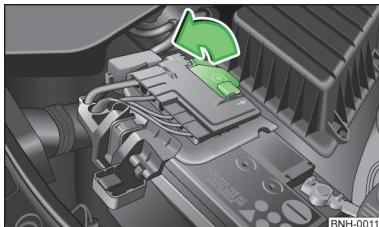


Fig. 131
Plastic cover of the vehicle battery

! Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment below a plastic box » Fig. 131.

» Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 131.

The installation of the battery cover on the positive terminal side takes place in the reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

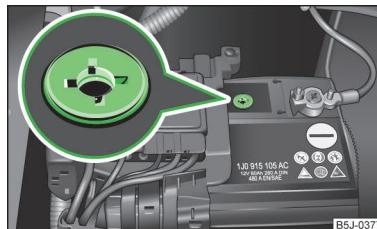


Fig. 132
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

! Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 132, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend you have the electrolyte level checked by a specialist garage from time to time, especially in the following cases.

- High external temperatures.
- Longer day trips.
- After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has some of its starting power at low temperatures. A discharged vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

! CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

i Note

The battery electrolyte level is also periodically checked by a specialist garage as part of the Inspection Service.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
- Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery cables if you are recharging the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the charger manufacturer's instructions.**

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

Both cables must be disconnected before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

! WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [page 165](#), *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

i Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend that the battery is replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting or reconnecting

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate faultlessly after the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 53
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» <i>User manual of the radio</i> or » <i>user manual of the navigation system</i>
Setting the clock	» page 28
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 29

i Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage to ensure the full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe and on page 147 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This may be noticed from the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or shut off completely if necessary.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tyre service life	152
New tyres	153
Unidirectional tyres	153
Tyre pressure monitor	154
Spare and back-up wheel	154
Full wheel trim	155
Wheel bolts	155
Wheel bolts	156

WARNING

National legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

Instructions for the use of tyres

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – there is the risk of an accident.
- On all four wheels, use only radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- For safety reasons, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – there is the risk of an accident.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – there is the risk of an accident.

! WARNING

Information regarding tyre damage or wear

- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – there is the risk of an accident.
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary grip particularly at high speeds on wet roads. "Aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface) could be the result.

! WARNING

Information on tyre pressure

- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre pressure at regular intervals.
- Pressures that are too low or too high impair handling – there is the risk of an accident.
- If the pressure is too low, the tyre must overcome a greater rolling resistance. This will heat the tyre up, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

! WARNING

Information on the spare wheel

- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

! CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » [page 154, Spare and back-up wheel](#).
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost dust caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or the opposite running direction, drive carefully as the optimum characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre service life

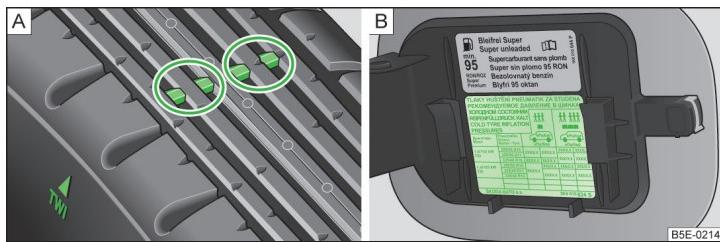


Fig. 133 Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/Open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre pressures

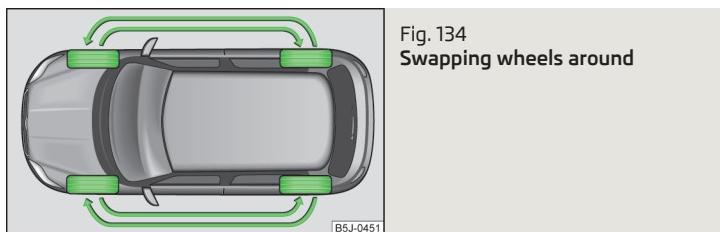


Fig. 134
Swapping wheels around

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

The life of tyres depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 133 - .

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

Adjust the tyre pressure accordingly if you are carrying a greater load.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when the car is being driven which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres.

Tyre damage

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Swapping wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend swapping the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 134. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres around every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to obtain optimal tyre life.

Storing tyres

Mark the tyres as you remove them so that you are able to refit them to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are arranged evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre a number of times depending on the make » Fig. 133 - . Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age

Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Therefore, we recommend that you do not use summer or winter tyres that are older than 6 years or 4 years respectively.

New tyres

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 150 first.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings

185/65 R 14 86 T

What this means is:

185	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 133 on page 152 - B
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 133 on page 152 - B
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial » Fig. 133 on page 152 - B
14	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 133 on page 152 - B
86	Load index » 
T	Speed symbol » 

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT ... 11 14...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load on each individual tyre.

83 487 kg

85 515 kg

86 530 kg

87 545 kg

91 615 kg

92 630 kg

93 650 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

R 170 km/h

S 180 km/h

T 190 km/h

U 200 km/h

H 210 km/h

V 240 km/h

W 270 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol for your vehicle are listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 150 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The direction of rotation indicated must be complied with to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are principally the following.

- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Tyre pressure monitor



Fig. 135
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

System settings

A **system configuration** must be run as follows after adjusting the tyre pressure, after changing one or more wheels, changing the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. swapping the wheels between the axles) or when the warning light lights up while driving.

- › Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure » [page 41](#), **Tyre pressure**.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Press the » Fig. 135 symbol button for longer than 2 seconds.

If the warning light lights up and does not go out after the system configuration, this indicates a system fault.

If the warning light flashes , there is a system fault.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light lights up when any of the following conditions are true.

- › The tyre pressure is low.
- › The structure of the tyre is damaged.
- › The vehicle is loaded on one side.
- › The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- › Snow chains are fitted.
- › The spare wheel is fitted.
- › One wheel per axle was changed.

! WARNING

- When the warning light illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.

! CAUTION

- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- The basic setting must be repeated every 10,000 km or once a year to ensure proper functioning of the tyre pressure monitor.
- The tyre pressure monitor does not replace the need to check tyre pressure regularly.

Spare and back-up wheel

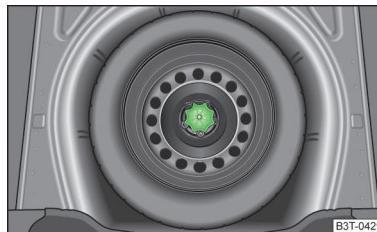


Fig. 136
Fixing the back-up or spare wheel

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 136.

Taking the wheel out

- › Open the tailgate.
- › Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
- › Remove the box with the tool kit.
- › Unscrew the nut » Fig. 136 anticlockwise.
- › Take out the wheel.

Stowing the wheel

- Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- Screw on the nut » Fig. 136 clockwise until the wheel is safely secured.
- Replace the box with the tool kit into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- Close the tailgate.

Install a wheel of the appropriate version and dimensions as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » **!.**

Temporary spare wheel

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- The temporary spare is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » Fig. 133 on page 152.
- Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

! WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

! CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

☞ Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 150 first.

Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 158 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the valve opening provided.
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference latches correctly into position.

! CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid striking the trim heavily when it is not yet inserted in the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area » page 161, Securing wheels against theft.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 137
Remove the cap

☞ Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 150 first.

Pulling off

- Push the extraction pliers » page 158 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 137.

Fitting

► Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts

 **Read and observe**  and  **on page 150 first.**

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Whenever you change the wheels fitted, e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of bolt head. Correct fastening of the wheels depends on this.

Winter use

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres _____ 156

Snow chains _____ 156

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

To achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the **Winter tyres** menu item  [page 34](#).



For the sake of the environment

Re-fit the summer tyres at an appropriate time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	165/70
6J x 14	37 mm	185/60
6J x 15	43 mm	185/55

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

CAUTION

- The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.
- Remove the **full wheel trims**  [page 155](#) before installing the snow chains.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle	157
Fire extinguisher	157
Vehicle tool kit	158

First aid kit and warning triangle

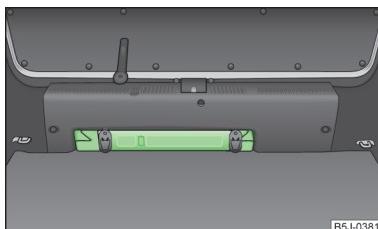


Fig. 138
Placing of the warning triangle

A warning triangle with the maximum dimensions 39 x 68 x 450 mm can be attached to the trim panel of the rear wall with rubber straps » Fig. 138.

! WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher

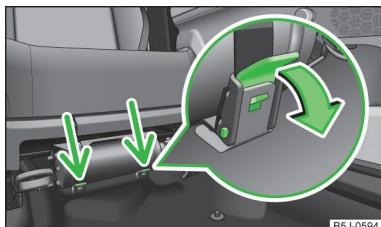


Fig. 139
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.

It is attached in the reverse order.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. National legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit



Fig. 140 Vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit and the jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (depending on equipment) » Fig. 140.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 3 Towing eye
- 4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 5 Car jack
- 6 Wheel brace
- 7 Tool for removing wheel bolt caps
- 8 Replacement bulb set

Screw the car jack back to its initial position after use to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

! WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – there is a risk of injury.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation	159
Changing a wheel	159
Subsequent steps	159
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	160
Raising the vehicle	160
Securing wheels against theft	161

! WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance. National legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on a flat and firm surface as possible.
- If the vehicle has been retrofitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » [page 153](#), New tyres.

! WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobble stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – there is a risk of injury.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

Read and observe on page 158 first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

- **Have all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

► Switch off the engine.

- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Uncouple any trailer.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » [page 158](#) and the **spare wheel** » [page 154, Spare and back-up wheel](#) from the boot.

Changing a wheel

Read and observe on page 158 first.

- Remove the full wheel trim » [page 155](#) or caps » [page 155](#).
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » [page 160](#).
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » [page 160](#).
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Tighten the opposite wheel bolts alternately (cross-wise) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » [page 160](#).
- Reinstall the wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

i Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » [page 153, Unidirectional tyres](#).

Subsequent steps

Read and observe on page 158 first.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » [page 154, Spare and back-up wheel](#).
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
- Check the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.

- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
- Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

Note

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 141
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Read and observe **!** on page 158 first.

Undoing

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grip the wrench at its end and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141 until it is tight.

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) until the vehicle has been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – there is a risk of injury.

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 161.

Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

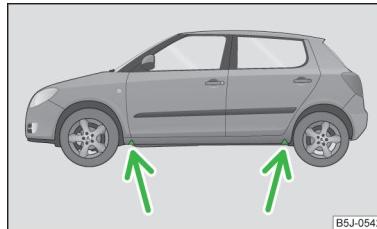


Fig. 142
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

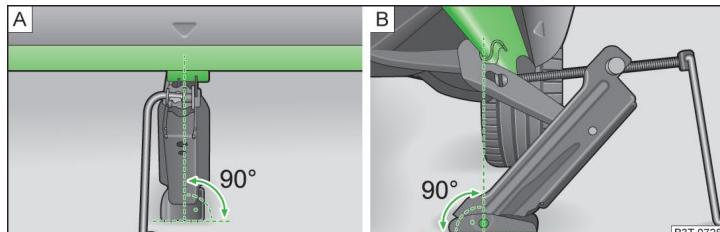


Fig. 143 Attach lifting jack

Read and observe **!** on page 158 first.

Position the car jack below the jacking point closest to the flat tyre » Fig. 142. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

- Wind the jack below the jacking point with the crank up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Offer the jack up so that its claw encloses the web » Fig. 143 - B.

- Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the point where the claw encloses the web » Fig. 143 - [A].
- Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the jacking points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

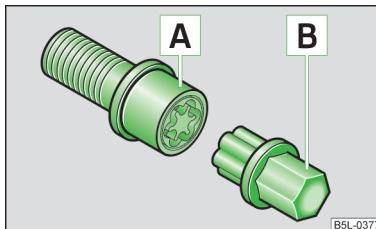


Fig. 144
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 158, *Vehicle tool kit*.

- Remove the cover from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Insert adapter [B] » Fig. 144 with its toothed end fully into the inner toothings of the anti-theft wheel bolt [A] to the stop so that only the outer hexagon projects.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter [B] up to the stop.
- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 160.
- After removing the adapter, replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

i Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a ŠKODA Original Parts replacement adapter, if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	162
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	162
Sealing and Inflating the tyre	163
Check after 10 minutes' driving	163

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel need not be removed during the repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- There is damage to the rim.
- The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

1 Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the wheel that was repaired using the breakdown kit or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

Breakdown kit

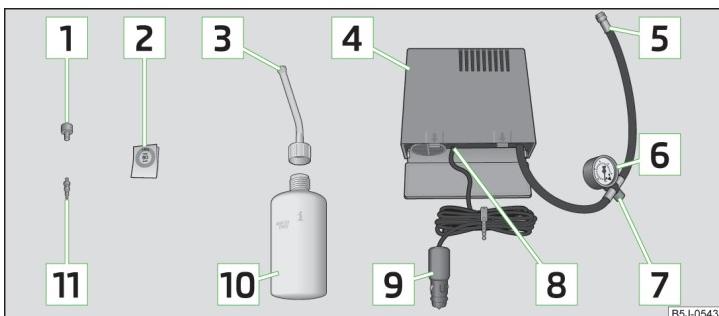


Fig. 145 Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 145

- 1 Valve remover
- 2 Sticker with "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph" speed designation
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Tyre inflation hose
- 6 Tyre pressure indicator
- 7 Air release valve
- 8 ON and OFF switch
- 9 12 volt cable connector
- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover [1] has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core [11].

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- ▶ If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance. National legal requirements must be observed.
- ▶ Have all the **occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- ▶ Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- ▶ Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- ▶ Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » [page 161](#).

Uncouple any trailer.

- ▶ Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
- ▶ Stick the sticker [2] » [Fig. 145](#) on [page 162](#) on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

- Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover **1** to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

- Read and observe **!** on page 162 first.

Sealing

- Shake the tyre inflator bottle **10** » Fig. 145 on page 162 vigorously several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose **3** onto the tyre inflator bottle **10** in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose **3** and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle **10** with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover **1**.

Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose **5** » Fig. 145 on page 162 firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air release valve **7** is closed.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector **9** into 12 Volt socket » page 80, 12-volt power outlet.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch **8**.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » **!**
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose **5** back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » **!**.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is reached, the journey may be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 163.

! WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated - there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials - there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. **!** Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest - there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

- Read and observe **!** on page 162 first.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

- !** Do not drive the vehicle. You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre pressure to the correct value again (see inside of fuel filler cap).
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

! Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle	164
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system	165

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » [page 139](#).
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

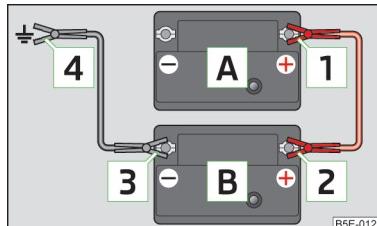


Fig. 146
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Read and observe and on page 164 first.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A** » [Fig. 146](#).
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Obey the instructions of the jump start cable manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

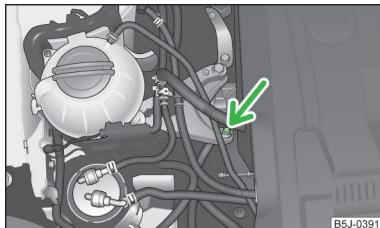


Fig. 147
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe and on page 164 first.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » Fig. 147.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	166
Rear towing eye	166
Vehicles with a tow hitch	166

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The following guidelines must be observed when towing.

Driver of the tow vehicle

► Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

► On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 163, Jump-starting](#).
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » [page 166, Front towing eye](#) or » [page 166, Rear towing eye](#) to the **detachable ball head of the tow equipment** » [page 121](#).

Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Front towing eye

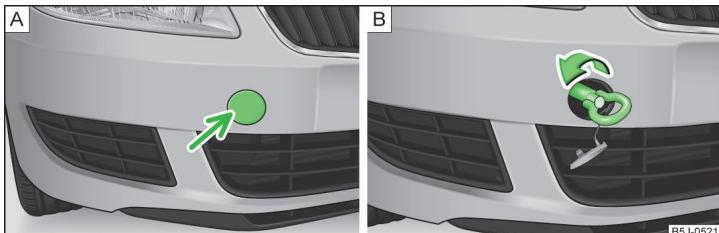


Fig. 148 Removing the cap / installing the towing eye

Read and observe **on page 165 first.**

Remove the cap carefully as follows.

- Press on the left half of the cap in the area of the arrow » Fig. 148 - **A**.
- Remove the cap from the front bumper.
- Screw the towing eye in clockwise by hand up to the stop » Fig. 148 - **B**. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
- In order to reinstall the cap after screwing out the towing eye, insert it in the mounts and then press on the right side of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

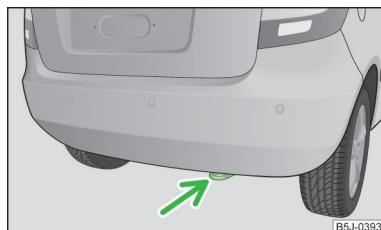


Fig. 149
Rear towing eye

Read and observe **on page 165 first.**

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right » Fig. 149.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe **on page 165 first.**

The removable towing ball may be fitted and used for towing on vehicles with a factory fitted tow hitch » [page 121, Towing a trailer](#).

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel _____ 167

Fuses in the engine compartment _____ 169

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

- Before replacing a fuse, switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer
- Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 167, Fuses in the dash panel or » page 169, Fuses in the engine compartment.
- Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the cover of the fuse box, place it on the relevant fuse and pull it out.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 139.

! CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses or replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – there is a risk of fire. This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

i Note

- We recommend that you always carry replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- One fuse may cover several consumers.
- A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dash panel



Fig. 150
Underside of the dash panel: Distribution board cover.

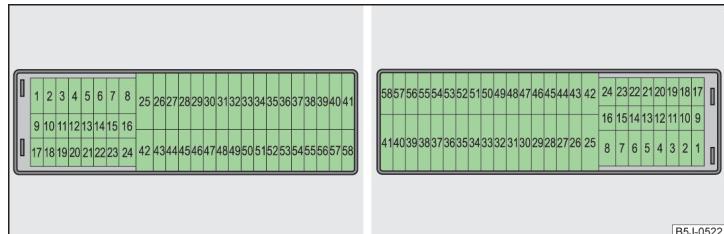


Fig. 151 Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering

! Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

- Carefully remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 150.
- After the fuse has been replaced, replace the cover in the dash panel in the opposite direction of the arrow so that the guide lugs are guided into the openings of the dash panel. Close the cover until it clicks into place.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	S-contact
2	START-STOP, air-conditioning system
3	Instrument cluster, headlamp beam adjustment
4	Control unit for ABS, button for START STOP
5	Petrol engine: Speed regulating system
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)
7	Ignition, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake pedal switch, clutch pedal switch
9	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, control unit for cornering lights, radiator fan, washing nozzles
10	Windscreen Wiper and Washer System
11	Mirror adjustment
12	Control unit for trailer detection
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Motor for halogen projector headlights with cornering light function
15	PDA navigation system
16	Electrohydraulic power steering
17	Light switch power supply
18	Mirror heater
19	S-contact
20	Alarm
21	Reversing light, fog lights with the function CORNER
22	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, mobile phone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, ESC, vehicle voltage control unit, multifunction steering wheel
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights
24	Central control unit
25	Seat heaters
26	Rear window wiper

No.	Power consumer
27	Telephone preinstallation
28	Petrol engine: AKF valve, Diesel engine: Control flap
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition, Cruise control system, operation of PTC relay
31	Lambda probe
32	High pressure fuel pump, pressure valve
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Daytime running lights/radio for vehicles with START-STOP
36	Main beam
37	Rear fog light, DC/DC converter START-STOP
38	Fog lights
39	Air blower for heating
40-41	Not assigned
42	Rear window heater
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Central control unit for convenience system
46	Engine control unit, fuel pump
47	Cigarette lighter, power socket in the luggage compartment
48	ABS, START-STOP (DC/DC) converter ESP
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights
50	START-STOP (DC/DC) transformer, radio
51	Electrical power window (front and rear) - left side
52	Electrical power window (front and rear) - right side
53	Parking light = left side, electrical sliding/tilting roof
54	START-STOP (instrument cluster), alarm
55	Control unit for automatic gearbox
56	Headlight cleaning system, parking light - right side
57	Left low beam, headlight range adjustment
58	Low beam on the right

Fuses in the engine compartment

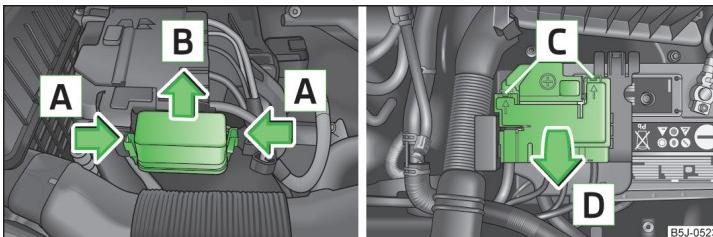


Fig. 152 Vehicle battery: Distribution board cover.

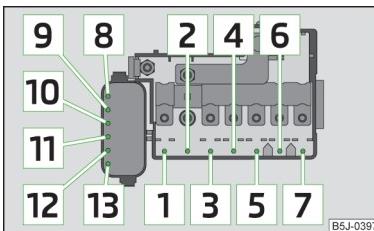


Fig. 153
Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment

Read and observe and on page 167 first.

- Press the securing clips on the fuse box cover together at the same time in the direction of arrow **A** » Fig. 152 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow **B**.
- Release the fixtures in the openings **C** using a flat screwdriver and fold the cover upwards in direction of arrow **D**.

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

No.	Power consumer
1	Generator
2	Not assigned
3	Interior
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system
5	Interior

No.	Power consumer
6	Glow plugs, radiator fan
7	Electrohydraulic power steering
8	ABS or TCS or ESC
9	Radiator fan
10	Automatic gearbox
11	ABS or TCS or ESC
12	Central control unit
13	Electrical auxiliary heating system

Note

Fuses 1-7 are replaced by a specialist garage.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights	170
Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)	170
Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)	171
Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)	171
Changing the front turn signal bulb	171
Changing the front parking light bulb	171
Foglights and daytime running lights	172
Fabia Scout, Fabia RS foglights	172
Changing the licence plate light bulb	173
Rear light	173

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, if uncertain, we recommend that bulbs are replaced by a specialist garage or other expert help is sought.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

! WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 139](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommend wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

! CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- When removing and installing the number plate light and tail light make sure that the paintwork of the vehicle and the tail light are not damaged.

i Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other light bulbs should be changed by your specialist garage.
- We recommend that you always carry a box of replacement bulbs in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- Visit a specialist garage if an LED is faulty.

Headlights

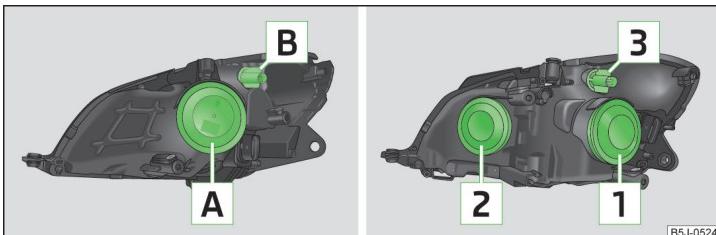


Fig. 154 Bulb arrangement: Halogen headlights/halogen projector headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 170 first.

Bulb arrangement in the Halogen headlamp

A - low beam, main beam and side lights

B - front turn signal light

Bulb arrangement in the Halogen projector headlights

1 - low beam / low and main beam

2 - Parking light / parking and main beam lights

3 - turn signal lights

Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)

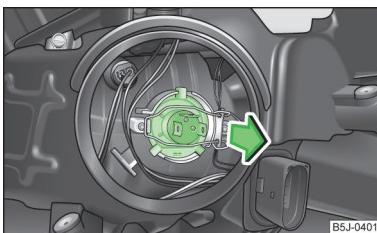


Fig. 155
Removing bulbs for low and main beam

Read and observe ! and ! on page 170 first.

Remove the rubber cover A » Fig. 154 on page 170.

- Remove the connector from the bulb, unlock the securing clip and remove the bulb » Fig. 155.
- Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb socket fit in the recesses of the reflector.
- Lock the circlip and insert the connector in the bulb.
- Fit the rubber cover **A**.

Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)

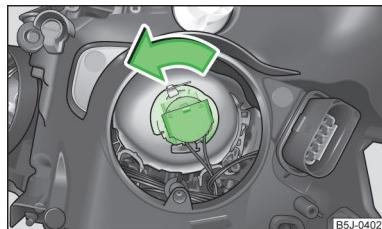


Fig. 156
Removing bulbs for low beam/
low and main beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

- Remove the rubber cover **1** » Fig. 154 on page 170.
- Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 156 and remove it.
- Replace the bulb, insert the connector and new bulb and turn to the stop in the opposite direction to that of the arrow.
- Fit the rubber cover **1**.

Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)

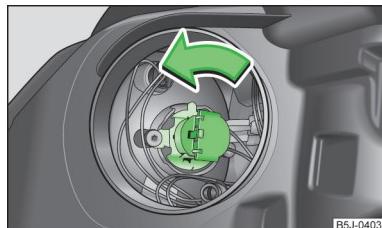


Fig. 157
Removing the bulb for the main
beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

- Remove the rubber cover **2** » Fig. 154 on page 170.
- Turn the connector with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 157 and remove it.
- Replace the bulb, insert the connector and new bulb and turn to the stop in the opposite direction to that of the arrow.
- Fit the rubber cover **2**.

Changing the front turn signal bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

- Remove the bulb holder **B** » Fig. 154 on page 170 or the bulb holder **3** to the stop in an anti-clockwise direction and remove with the bulb for the turn signal.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn clockwise to the stop.

Changing the front parking light bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

- Remove rubber cover **A** » Fig. 154 on page 170 or **2**.
- Grasp the lamp holder and remove it from the bulb housing.
- Replace the light bulb and insert the lamp holder back into the headlamp with the bulb.
- Fit the rubber cover.

Foglights and daytime running lights

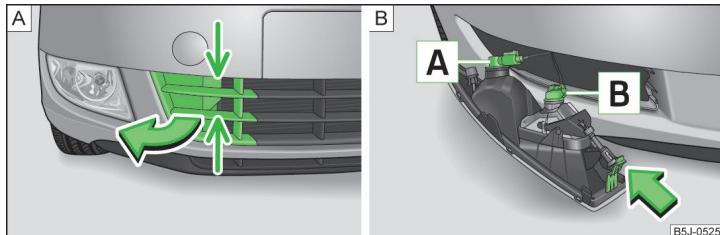


Fig. 158 Front bumper: Protective grille/removing the fog light

Read and observe and on page 170 first.

Bulb location » Fig. 158.

[A] - Bulb for daylight driving light

[B] - Light bulb for fog lights

Removing the cap

- Grasp the protective grille in the areas marked by the arrows » Fig. 158 - **A** and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.

Replacing light bulbs for fog lights/daytime running lights

- Insert your hand into the opening in the protective grille and press the catch » Fig. 158 - **B** in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the fog lamp.
- Turn the connector with the bulb in **counter-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** to the stop.
- To re-install the fog light, first of all place the fog light with the lug on the side opposite the licence plate.
- Press in the fog lamp on the side closest to the licence plate.
- Insert the cap, beginning with the lug on the side opposite the license plate.
- Press in the cap on the side facing the license plate. The cap must engage firmly.

Fabia Scout, Fabia RS foglights

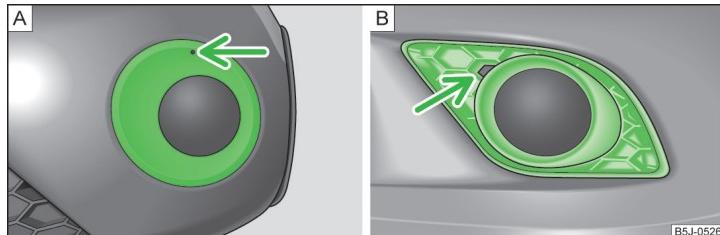


Fig. 159 Front bumper: Fabia Scout/Fabia RS

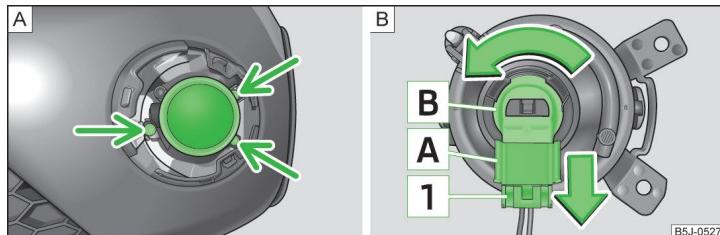


Fig. 160 Front bumper: Fog lights/fog lights: Replacing the light bulb

Read and observe and on page 170 first.

Removing the cap and fog light

- Insert the tool into the opening above the fog light » Fig. 159 - **A** (Fabia Scout) » page 158, **Vehicle tool kit** and remove the cover.
- Insert a finger into the opening next to the foglight » Fig. 159 - **B** (Fabia RS) and remove the cap.
- Unscrew » page 158, **Vehicle tool kit** the screws » Fig. 160 - with the screwdriver .
- Remove the fog lamp.

Changing light bulbs and installing fog lights

- Press the locking tab **1** » Fig. 160 on the connector **A** and remove the connector from the bulb holder **B**.

- Turn the bulb holder **B** and bulb in the direction of the arrow to the stop and remove.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder and new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow to the stop.
- Insert the plug **A** into the socket **B**.
- Retighten the screws and insert the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Changing the licence plate light bulb

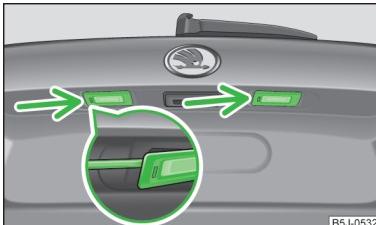


Fig. 161
Boot lid: Licence plate light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

- Insert a flat screwdriver into the opening in the area of the arrow » Fig. 161 and carefully press towards the centre of the lamp; the lamp pops out slightly as you do this.
- Remove the lamp.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder and insert a new one.
- Replace the glass cover and push in until the stop.

Make sure that you install the glass cover in the correct position.

Rear light

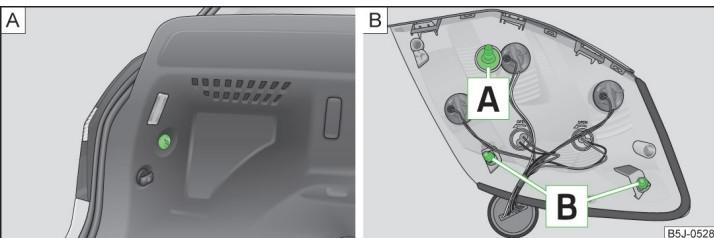


Fig. 162 Plastic nut/rear lamp

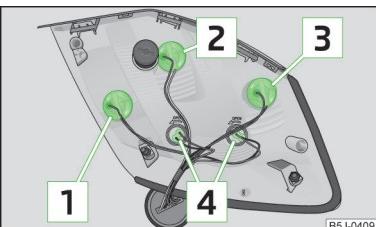


Fig. 163
Tail light assembly: Bulb arrangement

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 170 first.

Bulb location » Fig. 163.

- 1** - Rear fog light/Reversing light
- 2** - Turn signal lights
- 3** - Brake lights
- 4** - parking lights

Removing and installing the tail light

- Open the tailgate.
- Hold the rear light assembly still with one hand and unscrew the plastic nut » Fig. 162 - **A** with the other.
- Grip the tail lamp assembly and carefully remove it by pulling it back at an angle with loosening movements. Do not pull the grommet with the cables out of the bodywork.

- To refit the rear light assembly, first insert screw **A** into the opening in the bodywork » Fig. 162.
- Carefully press the tail light assembly into the bodywork so that the bolts **B** latch with the mounts in the body.
- Hold the rear light assembly still with one hand and attach and tighten the nuts » Fig. 162 - **A** with the other hand.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly

- To replace the bulb, turn the bulb holder **anti-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the housing » Fig. 163.
- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the housing and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.

Note

For slackening and tightening the plastic nut use a coin or similar object.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data	175
Operating weight and payload	175
measurement of fuel consumption and CO ₂ emissions according to ECE	
Regulations and EU Directives	176
Dimensions	177
Vehicle-specific details according to engine type	178

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

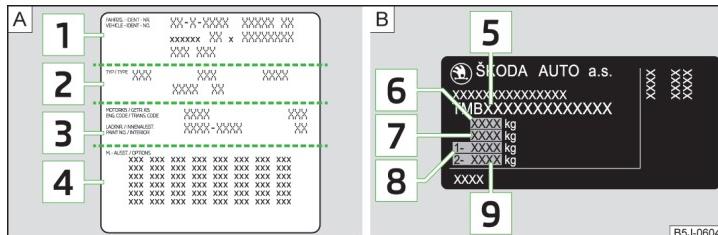


Fig. 164 Vehicle data sticker/type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 164 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 164 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

- 5 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- 6 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 8 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), together with a nameplate.

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – there is the risk of an accident and damage.

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » [page 178](#), *Vehicle-specific details according to engine type*.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

1 Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a specialist garage.

measurement of fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the Škoda websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

	FABIA	FABIA GreenLine	FABIA SCOUT	FABIA RS	ESTATE	ESTATE GreenLine	ESTATE SCOUT	ESTATE RS
Length	4000	4000	4032	4029	4247	4247	4275	4276
Width	1642	1642	1658	1642	1642	1642	1658	1642
Width including exterior mirrors	1886	1886	1886	1886	1886	1886	1886	1886
Height	1498/1513 ^{a)} 1484 ^{b)}	1484 ^{b)}	1498/1513 ^{a)} 1484 ^{b)}	1492	1498/1513 ^{a)} 1484 ^{b)}	1484 ^{b)}	1498/1513 ^{a)} 1484 ^{b)}	1494
Clearance	134/149 ^{a)} /119 ^{b)}	119 ^{b)}	134	129	135/149 ^{a)} /119 ^{b)}	135/119 ^{b)}	135	129
Wheelbase	2465	2465	2465	2464	2465	2465	2465	2464
Track gauge front/rear	1433/1426 (1417/1410) ^{c)} (1429/1422) ^{d)}	1417/1410	1433/1426	1423/1415	1433/1426 (1417/1410) ^{c)} (1429/1422) ^{d)}	1417/1410	1433/1426	1423/1415

^{a)} The value corresponds to the status with the rough road package.

^{b)} The value corresponds to the status with the sport chassis.

^{c)} Applies to cars fitted with the 1.2 l/77 kW TSI and 1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR engines and 15" wheels.

^{d)} Applies to cars fitted with the 1.6 l/77 kW MPI, 1.6 l/55 kW TDI CR and 1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR engines and 14" wheels.

Vehicle-specific details according to engine type

The values specified have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./44 kW engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
44/5200	108/3000	3/1198

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	155	156
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	16.5	16.7
Operating weight (in kg)	1095	1115
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	800 ^{a)} /900 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	540/500 ^{c)}	550/450 ^{c)}

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %

c) Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./51 kW engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
51/5400	112/3000	3/1198

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	163	164
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.9	15.0
Operating weight (in kg)	1095	1115
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	800 ^{a)} /900 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	540/500 ^{c)}	550/450 ^{c)}

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %

c) Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
63/4800	160/1500-3500	4/1197

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	177	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.7	11.8
Operating weight (in kg)	1116	1136
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 ^{a)} /1200 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	550/500 ^{c)}	560/450 ^{c)}

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %

c) Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
77/5000	175/1500-4100	4/1197

Performance and Weights	FABIA MG5	FABIA DSG7	COMBI MG5	COMBI DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	191	189	193	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.1	10.2	10.2	10.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1130	1164	1150	1184
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1200		
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	560/500 ^{a)}	580/500 ^{a)}	570/450 ^{a)}	590/450 ^{a)}

a) Vehicles without ABS.

1.4 ltr./63 kW engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
63/5000	132/3800	4/1390

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	175	176
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1104	1124
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1000 ^{a)} /1200 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	550/500 ^{c)}	560/450 ^{c)}

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %

c) Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 litres/77 kW engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
77/5600	153/3800	4/1598

Performance and Weights	FABIA MG5	FABIA AG6	COMBI MG5	COMBI AG6
Top speed (km/h)	190	185	192	186
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.4	11.5	10.5	11.6
Operating weight (in kg)	1114	1159	1134	1179
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1000 ^{a)} /1200 ^{b)}		
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	550/500 ^{c)}	570/500 ^{c)}	560/450 ^{c)}	580/450 ^{c)}

a) Uphills up to 12 %

b) Uphills up to 8 %

c) Vehicles without ABS.

1.4 ltr./132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
132/6200	250/2000-4500	4/1390

Performance and Weights	FABIA RS	ESTATE RS
Top speed (km/h)	224	226
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	
Operating weight (in kg)	1318	1313

1.2 ltr./55 kW TDI CR DPF engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
55/4200	180/2000	3/1199

Performance and Weights	FABIA	FABIA GreenLine	ESTATE	ESTATE GreenLine
Top speed (km/h)	166	172	167	172
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.2	14.2	14.3	14.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1189	1203	1209	1219
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1000 ^{a)} /1200 ^{b)}		
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	590/500 ^{c)}		600/450 ^{c)}	

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

^{c)} Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./55 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
55/4000	195/1500-2000	4/1598

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	166	167
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.1	14.2
Operating weight (in kg)	1204	1224
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1000 ^{a)} /1200 ^{b)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	600/500 ^{c)}	610/450 ^{c)}

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %

^{c)} Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
66/4200	230/1500-2500	4/1598

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	176	177
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.6	12.7
Operating weight (in kg)	1204	1224
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	600/500 ^{a)}	610/450 ^{a)}

^{a)} Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
77/4400	250/1500-2500	4/1598

Performance and Weights	FABIA	ESTATE
Top speed (km/h)	188	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0
Operating weight (in kg)	1219	1239
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	600/500 ^{a)}	610/450 ^{a)}

^{a)} Vehicles without ABS.

Index

A

Abroad

- Driving abroad 114
- Unleaded petrol 114

ABS

- warning light 38

Accessories

Adjusting

- Belt height 13
- Exterior mirrors 65
- Head restraints 69
- Steering wheel 8

Adjusting the seats

- 7

Adjustment

- Headlight beam 57
- Seats 66

Adjustments and technical changes

- Spoiler 128

Adjustments and technical modifications

- Airbags 128

Aerial

- See windows 132

Airbag

- 14

Adjustments and impairment of the airbag system 128

Deactivating 18

Deployment 14

Front airbag 15

Head airbag 17

Side airbag 16

Switching off the front passenger airbag 18

Airbag system

- 14

Air conditioning

- Operation 89

Air conditioning system

- Air outlets 86
- Climatronic 91
- Manual air conditioning system 88

Air outlets

- 86

Alarm

- 49

Anti-theft alarm system

- 49

Operation 49

Trailer 126

Antilock Braking System

- 116

Armrest

- 84

Ashtray

- 79

ASR

- 116

warning light 38

Assist systems

- 38, 116

ABS 38, 116

ASR 38, 116

Cruise control system 118

EDS and XDS 116

ESC 38, 115

Parking aid 117

START-STOP 119

Auto Check Control

- 34

Automatic gearbox

Selector lever-emergency unlocking 109

Starting-off and driving 108

Tiptronic 107

Automatic load deactivation

- 150

Automatic transmission

- 106

Kickdown 108

Malfunction 108

Selector lever lock 107

Using the selector lever 106

AUX

- 101

Avoiding damage to the vehicle

Driving through water 113

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

- 113

B

Back-up wheel

- 154

Ball head

Check fitting 123

Fitting 123

Ready position 122

Removing 124

Belts

- 10

Belt tensioners

- 13

Bicycle carrier

- 76

Bonnet

Closing 140

Opening 140

Boot

Cover 71

Emergency unlocking 51

Fastening elements 70

Fixing nets 71

Folding hooks 71

see Boot lid 51

Unlocking the boot lid 51

Boot lid

automatic locking 51

Brake assist

- 115

Brake booster

- 104

Brake fluid

- 146

Changing 146

Checking 146

Display messages 36

Brakes

Brake booster 104

Brake fluid 146

Handbrake 105

Indicator light 36

Running in 110

Braking

Information for braking 104

Breakdown kit

- 162

Bulbs	
Changing	169
In the rear light	173
Button in the driver's door	
Electrical power windows	51
C	
Car care	127
Washing	129
Car computer	
see Multifunction display	29
Caring for paintwork	131
Car park ticket holder	81
Carrier	77
Central locking button	47
Central locking system	45
lock	47
unlock	47
Changing	
Brake fluid	146
Bulbs	169
Bulbs in the rear light	173
Engine oil	144
Foglight bulb (Scout, RS)	172
Foglights and daytime running lights bulbs	172
Front parking light bulb	171
Front turn signal bulb	171
Fuses	167
Fuses in the dash panel	167
Fuses in the engine compartment	169
High beam bulb - halogen projector headlights	171
Licence plate light bulb	173
Low beam and high beam bulb - halogen headlights	170
Low beam and high beam bulb - halogen projector headlights	171
Wheels	158
Changing a wheel	
Preparation	159
Removing and fitting a wheel	159
Subsequent steps	159
Charging a vehicle battery	149
Check	
Fit ball head properly	123
Checking	
Battery electrolyte level	148
Brake fluid	146
Coolant level	145
Engine oil	143
Oil level	143
Windscreen washer fluid	141
Children and safety	19
Child safety	
Side airbag	21
Child safety lock	44
Child safety seat	
Use of child safety seats	21
Child seat	
Classification	21
ISOFIX	22
on the front passenger seat	20
TOP TETHER	23
Use of ISOFIX child seats	22
Chrome parts	
refer to Taking care of your vehicle	131
Cigarette lighter	80
Cleaning	127
Alcantara	135
Covers on electrically heated seats	135
Fabrics	135
Headlight lenses	132
Natural leather	134
Plastic parts	131
Synthetic leather	135
Wheels	133
Climatronic	
Automatic mode	92
Control elements	91
Controlling the blower	92
Defrosting windscreen	93
Recirculated air mode	92
Setting the temperature	92
Clock	28
Clothes hook	81
Cockpit	
12-volt power outlet	80
Ashtray	79
Cigarette lighter	80
General view	25
Lighting	60
Storage compartments	81
Compartments	81
Computer	
see Multifunction display	29
Convenience turn signal	58
Coolant	144
Checking	145
Display messages	37
Replenishing	145
Warning light	37
Coolant temperature gauge	
display	27
Correct seated position	7
Driver	7
Front passenger	8
Notes	9
Rear seats	9
Counter for distance driven	28
Cruise control system	118
Cupholders	79
D	
DAY LIGHT	
see Daylight running lights	57
Daylight running lights	57

De-icing rear window	62	Economical driving	103
Deactivating airbags	18	Anticipation in driving	110
Decorative films	132	Ballast	112
Delayed locking of the boot lid		Driving at full throttle	111
see boot lid	51	Idling	111
Diesel		Regular maintenance	112
refer to Fuel	138	Saving energy	112
Diesel fuel		Short distances	111
Operation in winter	138	Tyre pressure	111
Diesel particulate filter	39	EDS	116
display messages	39	Electrical power windows	
Digital clock	28	Button in the driver's door	51, 52
Dipstick	143	Button in the rear door	52
Display		Central locking system	53
Service interval	32	Electric power windows	
Distance driven	28	Operational faults	53
Door		Electric sliding/tilting roof	54
Child safety lock	44	Electronic Differential Lock	116
Closing	44	Electronic immobilizer	102
Indicator light for an open door	36	Emergency	
Opening	44	Changing a wheel	158
Doors		Hazard warning light system	60
Emergency locking	45	Jump-starting	163, 164
driving		locking of the doors	45
emissions	176	Selector lever-unlocking	109
fuel consumption	176	Sliding/tilting roof	55
Driving		Towing the vehicle	165
Abroad	114	Towing the vehicle using the tow hitch	166
Driving through water on streets	113	Tyre repair	161
Maximum speed	178	Unlocking the boot lid	51
Driving economically		Emergency equipment	
Economical gear changing	110	Fire extinguisher	157
Driving through water	113	First aid kit	157
E		Jack	158
Economical and environmentally friendly driv-		Vehicle tool kit	158
ing	110	Warning triangle	157
		Emissions	176
		Engine	
		Running in	109
		Starting and stopping the engine	102
		Starting the engine	103
		Switching off the engine	103
		Engine compartment	139
		Brake fluid	146
		Coolant	145
		Overview	141
		Vehicle battery	146
		Engine number	175
		Engine oil	142
		Capacity	142
		Changing	144
		Checking	143
		Replenishing	144
		Specifications	142
		Warning light	36
		Engine revolutions counter	27
		Environment	110
		Environmental compatibility	112
		Environmentally friendly driving	110
		ESC	
		Function	115
		warning light	38
		F	
		Films	132
		Fire extinguisher	157
		First aid kit	157
		Flashers	58
		Fog lights	58
		Footmats	105
		see Footmats	105
		Front airbag	15
		Front seats	66
		Fuel	136
		Diesel	138
		Fuel gauge	27
		gauge	27
		refer to Fuel	136

Refuelling	137	Recirculated air mode	88
Unleaded petrol	137	Seats	67
fuel consumption	176	Heating and air conditioning	85
Fuel consumption	110	Hill hold control	115
Fuses		Horn	25
Assignment	167		
Changing	167		
Colour coding	167		
G		I	
Gear		Ignition	103
Recommended gear	28	Ignition lock	103
Gearbox		Immobilizer	102
Display messages	34	Individual settings	
Gear changing		locking	46
Gear stick	105	unlocking	46
General view		Inertia reel	13
Cockpit	25	Instrument cluster	26
Glow plug system		Overview	26
Warning light	39	see instrument cluster	26
GSM	93	Interior monitor	50
H		ISOFIX	22
Handbrake	105		
Hazard warning light system	60	J	
Head airbag	17	Jack	158
Headlight cleaning system		Jacking points	
Headlight cleaning system	63	Raise vehicle	160
Headlights	170	Jump-starting	163, 164
Driving abroad	114		
Headlight cleaning system	63	L	
Head restraint	69	Light	
Storing in the seat squabs	69	Beam adjustment	57
Heating		Cockpit	60
Deicing the windows	88	Headlight flash	58
Exterior mirrors	65	Lights	56
Operating	87	Cockpit	60, 61
Operation	87	Daylight running	57
Rear window	62	Fog lights	58
		Foglights with the CORNER function	59
		Halogen projector headlights with cornering	
		light function	58
		Hazard warning light system	60
		Low beam lights	56
		Main beam lights	58
		Parking lights	56, 60
		Rear fog light	59
		Replacing bulbs	169
		Switching on and off	56
		Tourist lights	59
		Turn signals	58
		warning lights	35
		Lock	
		Central locking system	47
		Locking	
		Emergency locking	45
		Remote control	48
		without central locking	45
		Locking and unlocking from the inside	47
		Low beam lights	56
		Luggage compartment	
		Class N1 vehicles	70
		Lighting	61
		Retractable luggage compartment cover (Fabia Estate)	72
		Variable loading floor	73
		M	
		Main beam	58
		Maintenance	112
		Decorative films	132
		Manual air conditioning	
		Recirculated air mode	90
		Manual gear changing	
		see Gear changing	105
		MAXI DOT	
		Main menu	33
		see MAXI DOT display	33
		Settings	34
		MAXI DOT display	33
		maximum allowable weights	175
		Maximum speed	178

MDI	101
Mirror	
Exterior mirrors	65
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror	65
Vanity	62
Mobile phone	93
Connecting to the hands-free system	96
Modes of the automatic transmission	106
Modifications	127
Multifunction display	
Functions	29
Memory	29
Operation	30
Multimedia	99
 N	
N1	70
nameplate	175
Net partition	74
Behind the front seats	75
Behind the rear seats	74
Removing and refitting the housing	75
 O	
Oil	
see Engine oil	143
Oil pressure	
Display messages	36
Onboard computer	
see Multifunction display	29
Operating weight	175
Operation in winter	
Diesel fuel	138
Vehicle battery	148
Outside temperature	30
Overview	
Engine compartment	141
warning lights	35
 P	
Paintwork	
See Caring for paintwork	131
Parking	
Parking aid	117
Parking lights	56
Part replacement	127
Passive safety	
Before every journey	6
driving safety	6
Safety equipment	6
Passive Safety	6
Payload	175
Pedals	105
Footmats	105
Petrol	
refer to Fuel	137
Polishing the paintwork	
See Vehicle care	131
Power window force limiter	53
 R	
Radiator fan	141
Radio reception	
See windows	132
Raise vehicle	160
Rear-view mirror	
Exterior mirrors	65
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror	65
Rear fog light	59
Rear window - Heating	62
Recirculated air mode	
Manual air conditioning	90
Recommended gear	28
Refuelling	137
Fuel	137
Remote control	48
Synchronisation process	49
 Remote control key	
Replacing the battery	43
Repairs and technical alterations	127
Replacing	
Vehicle battery	149
Windscreen wiper blades	64
Replenishing	
Coolant	145
Engine oil	144
Windscreen washer fluid	141
Rims	150
Roof luggage rack	
Attachment points	78
Roof rack system	77
Roof load	78
Running-in	
the first 1500 km	109
Running in	
Brake pads	110
Engine	109
Tyres	110
 S	
SAFE	
see Safe securing	46
SAFELOCK	
see Safe securing	46
Safe securing	46
Safety	
Child safety	19
Child safety seats	19
Correct seated position	7
Head restraints	69
ISOFIX	22
TOP TETHER	23
Save electricity	110
Seals	
Vehicle care	131

Seat	
Adjusting	66
Seat belt	
warning light	36
Seat belts	10
Belt tensioners	13
Cleaning	135
fastening and unfastening	12
Height adjustment	13
Seatbelts	
Inertia reels	13
Seat belts	
The physical principle of a frontal collision	11
Seats	
folding forward	67
Head restraints	69
Heating	67
Removing the seats	68
Seats and storage	66
see Automatic gearbox	
Manual gear shifting on the multifunction steering wheel	107
Selector lever	
see Using the selector lever	106
Service display	32
Service intervals	127
Setting	
Heating	88
Manual air conditioning system	90
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror	65
Setting the clock	
Clock	28
Shifting gears	
Driving and saving energy	110
Side airbag	16
Sliding/tilting roof	54
Comfort operation	55
Emergency operation	55
Opening and raising	54
Operation	54
Sliding/tilting sunroof	
Closing	54
Snow chains	156
Spare wheel	154
Speedometer	27
Speed symbol	
see Wheels	153
Spoiler	128
Stalk	
Main beam	58
Turn signals	58
START-STOP	119
Operating conditions for the system	119
operation	120
system-related automatic start-up	120
START-STOPP	
Manually deactivating/activating the system	120
Starting and stopping the engine	102
Starting engine	
Jump-starting	163
Starting the engine	103
Jump-starting	164
START STOP	
Information messages	120
Jump-starting	165
Steering wheel	8
Storage	81
Storage Compartment	
Lighting	61
Storage compartments	81
Sun visors	62
Switching lights on and off	56
Switching off the engine	103
Synthetic leather	135
T	
Tailgate	50
Taking care of the vehicle	
Natural leather	134
Seat belts	135
Taking care of your vehicle	
Automatic car wash system	130
Chrome parts	131
Cleaning the wheels	133
Door lock cylinders	132
Headlight lenses	132
High-pressure cleaner	130
Plastic parts	131
Washing by hand	129
Wash system	130
Technical data	175
Telephone	93
Tiptronic	107
Tools	158
TOP TETHER	23
Tourist lights	59
Towing	165
Towing a trailer	121
Towing device	
Description	122
Drawbar load	121
Use and care	124
Towing eye	
Front	166
Rear	166
Towing protection	50
Traction Control System (ASR)	116
Trailer	121, 125
Loading	125
Towing a trailer	125
Transport	
Boot	69
Roof rack system	77
Transporting children safely	19
Turn signals	58
Two-way radio systems	93

Tyre load-bearing capacity	153
see Wheels	153
Tyre pressure monitor	
Setting	154
Tyre repair	
Check pressure	163
Preparations	162
Sealing and inflating the tyre	163
Tyres	150
New	153
Pressure	152
See Wheels	153
Sizes	152
Wear indicator	152
 U	
Underbody protection	133
Underbody waxing	133
Unleaded petrol	114
unlock	
Central locking system	47
Unlocking	
Remote control	48
without central locking	45
Unlocking and locking	42
USB	101
Useful equipment	78
12-volt power outlet	80
Ashtray	79
Car park ticket holder	81
Cigarette lighter	80
Clothes hood	81
Cupholders	79
Using the selector lever	106
 V	
Variable loading floor	73
Dividing the luggage compartment	73
Removing and refitting	73
Vehicle battery	
Automatic load deactivation	150
Charging	149
Checking the battery electrolyte level	148
Cover	148
Disconnecting and reconnecting	149
Operation in winter	148
Replacing	149
Safety instructions	146
Vehicle care	
Alcantara	135
Care of the interior	133
Decorative films	132
Fabrics	135
Polishing	131
Rubber seals	131
Seat covers	135
Synthetic leather	135
Underbody waxing	133
Vehicle exterior care	130
Waxing	131
Vehicle data sticker	175
Vehicle dimensions	177
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	175
Vehicle key	42
Vehicle status	
see Auto Check Control	34
Vehicle tool kit	158
Visors	62
 W	
Warning lights	35
Warning symbols	
see warning lights	35
Warning triangle	157
Washing	127
Automatic car wash system	130
by hand	129
Chrome parts	131
High-pressure cleaner	130
Water	
Driving through	113
Waxing	
See Vehicle care	131
Wheel bolts	
Anti-theft wheel bolt	161
Caps	155
Loosening and tightening	160
Wheels	
Back-up wheel	154
Bolts	156
Changing	158
Full trim	155
General information	150
Load index	153
Snow chains	156
Spare wheel	154
Speed symbol	153
Storing wheels	152
Swapping wheels around	152
Tyre pressure	152
Tyre service life	152
Tyre wear indicator	152
Unidirectional tyres	153
Wheel sizes	152
Winter tyres	156
Window convenience operation	53
Windows	132
Deicing	132
See Electrical power windows	51
Window wipers	
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	64
Windscreen	
Deicing	132
Windscreen washer fluid	
Checking	141
Replenishing	141
Warning light	41
Winter	141
Windscreen washer system	141

Windscreen wash system	
Windscreen washer	63
Windscreen wiper	
Operate	63
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	64
Windscreen wipers	
Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades	64
Windscreen washer fluid	141
Winter	
Deicing windows	132
Winter operation	
Snow chains	156
Winter tyres	
See Wheels	156
Winter use	
Winter tyres	156
X	
XDS	116

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment may only be released later or may only be offered in certain markets. Information may be obtained from ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App - ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App - Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

- › Navigation through the **list of content**
- › Classical **reading page by page**
- › **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
- › **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked  below.

Work with us - for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Fabia anglicky 05.2014
S55.5610.18.20
5J6 012 720 AG